



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



*Prof. Merrill*

LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

GIFT OF

*Prof. W. A. Merrill.*

Received

*Feb.*

, 1898.

Accession No. *69334*

. Class No.

*760e*

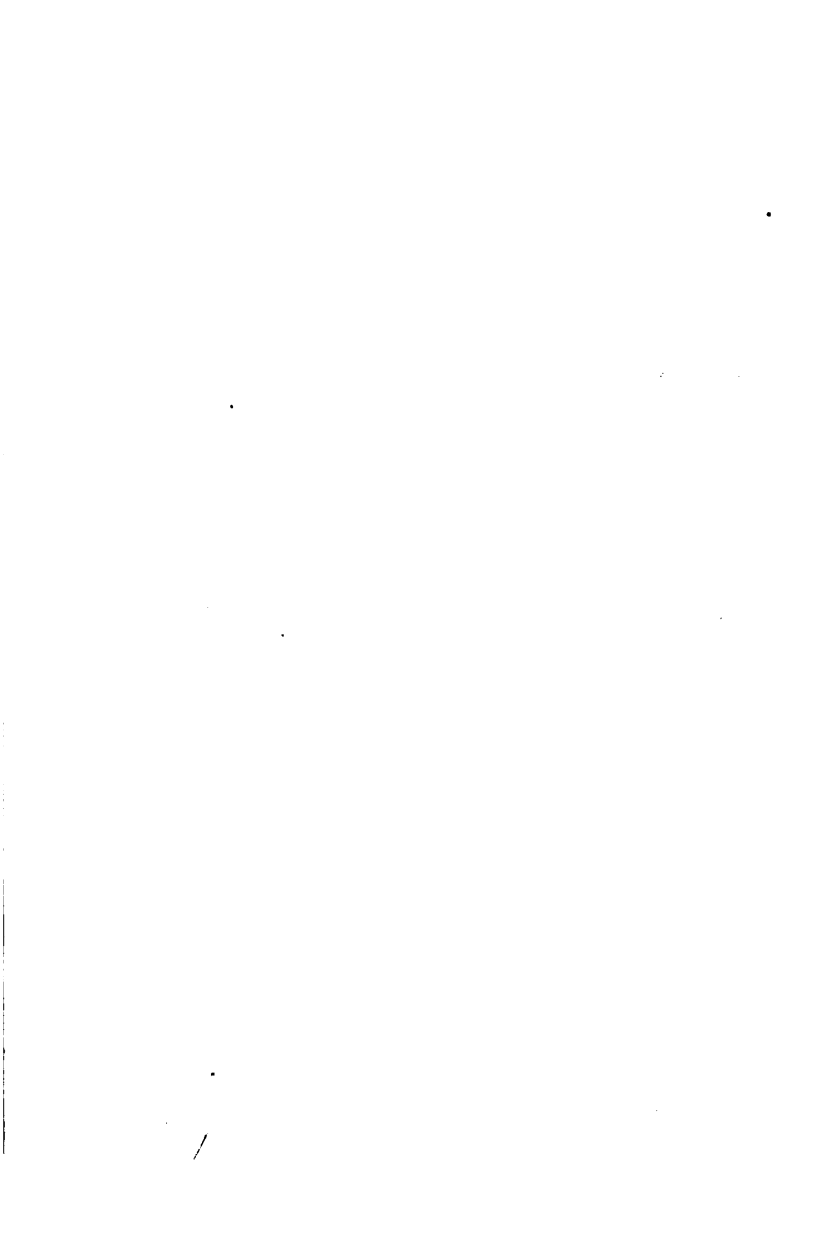
*J93*

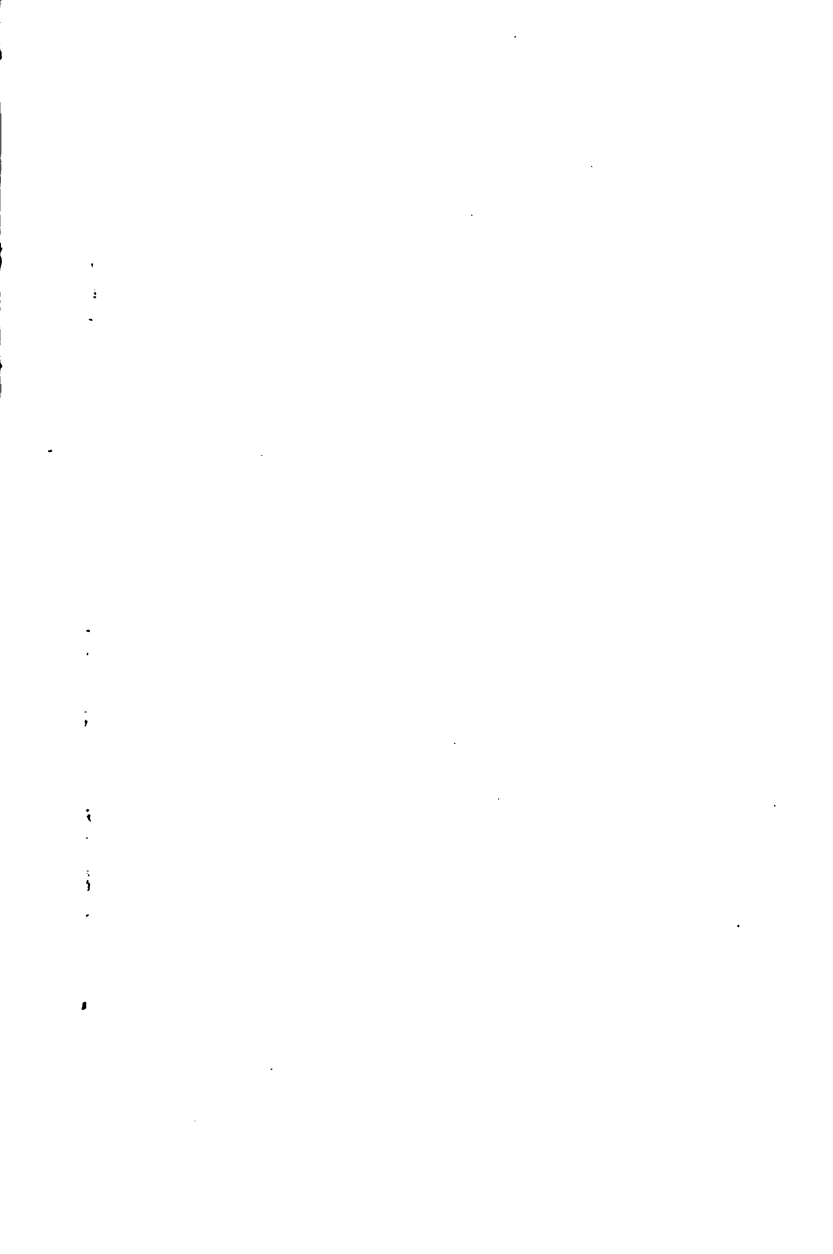




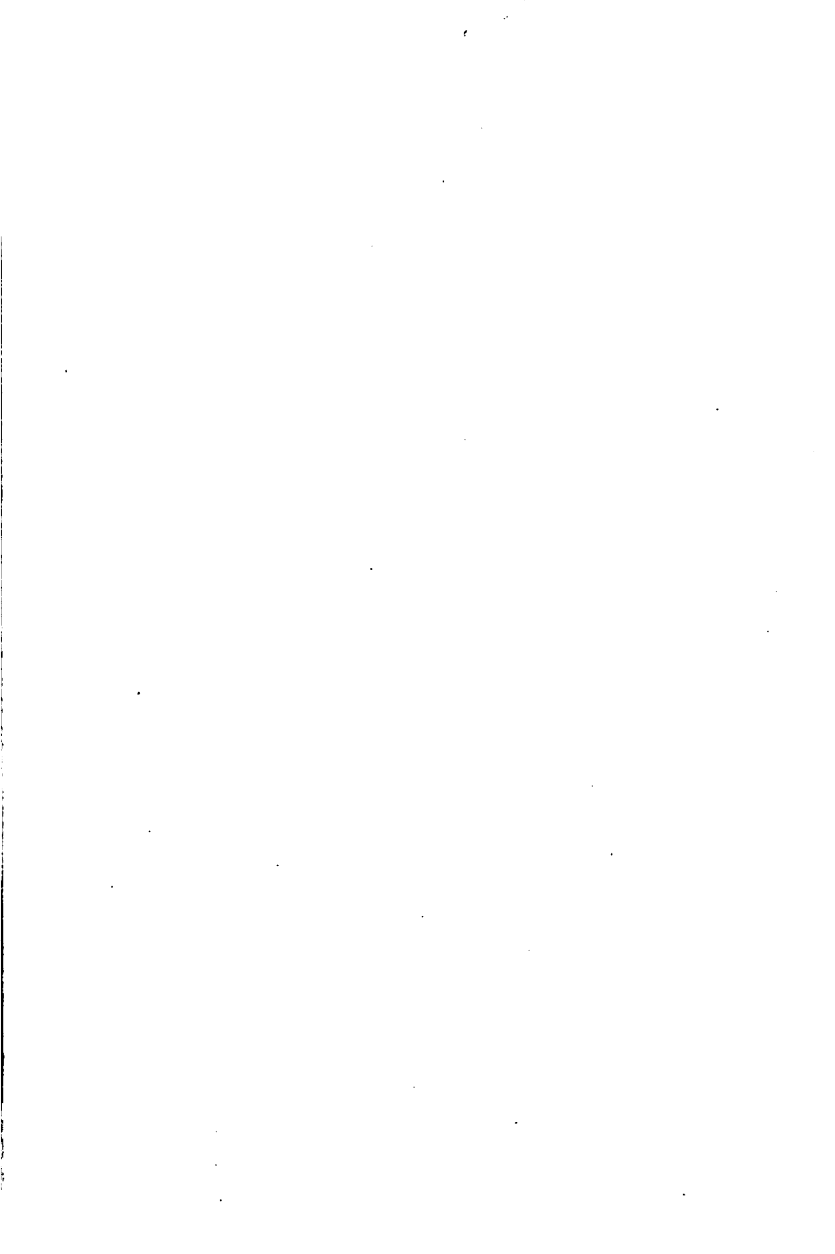












# THE LATIN IN ENGLISH

## FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN

*WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO THE ETYMOLOGY  
OF ENGLISH WORDS OF LATIN ORIGIN*

BY

HARRY PRATT JUDSON

*Professor in the University of Chicago*

SECOND EDITION, REVISED



NEW YORK  
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY  
1897

69334

COPYRIGHT, 1896,

BY

HENRY HOLT & CO.



To

Chancellor George Edwin MacLean





## PREFACE.

---

**THERE** is no royal road to learning; and this book is by no means intended even as a "short cut" to a complete knowledge of Latin. But it is the belief of the writer that it is possible to get definite value from knowing some Latin, even if one is unable to know much Latin; and that it would be a saving of time and energy to have selected for one just the portion which would have the most immediate utility.

There are many students in our high schools and academies who do not study Latin at all. But with the most of these it is an object to get as thorough an acquaintance as may be with the English language, and for this purpose there are made a number of works on the analysis of words. All such books, however, have virtually to ignore the fact of the composite source of English. The mere assertion that a given root or suffix is of Latin or Greek origin means very little to the student. And a knowledge of derivatives gained in this way is usually quite mechanical and narrow.

It is the theory of the present work that the derivation of English words from Latin cannot be well understood by one who is ignorant of that language.

Of course, much knowledge would be desirable; but in fact, as has been said, for a large proportion of our high school students that is out of the question. Is it, then, possible to get so much acquaintance with Latin etymology, with the peculiar methods of inflection and of the composition of words in that tongue, and to acquire such a vocabulary, as to make the Latin derivation of English words intelligible, and at the same time not to spend more than an ordinary school year in the process? This book is an attempt to answer that question in the affirmative.

There is a further purpose. The decision that a boy or girl shall or shall not study Latin is often made at an early age and without very mature consideration; and not infrequently when too late the student regrets a negative decision. By taking up this work it is possible to spend a year in studying the English language, and at the same time to get such a start in Latin that if then desired it will be easy to go on. Thus the important decision in question may be deferred a year, and finally made more intelligently.

These two purposes the author has attempted to carry out, — with what success can only be seen when the book has had the test of the schoolroom.

H. P. J.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO,  
February 15, 1896.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	iii
TO TEACHERS . . . . .	ix
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	xi

### PART I.

HOW LATIN WORDS ARE FORMED . . . . .	1
STUDY I. The Alphabet . . . . .	3
II. Phonetic Changes . . . . .	8
III. Words . . . . .	10

### PART II.

HOW LATIN WORDS ARE INFLECTED . . . . .	13
STUDY IV. Nouns — Labial Stems. <b>Sŭm</b> . . . . .	15
V. Nouns — Lingual Stems. <b>Ĕrām</b> . . . . .	21
VI. Nouns — Palatal Stems. <b>Ĕrō</b> . . . . .	24
VII. Synopsis of Verbs. <b>Fuī</b> . . . . .	27
VIII. Synopsis of Verbs ( <i>continued</i> ). <b>Fuērām</b> . . . . .	32
IX. Liquid and <b>S</b> Stems. <b>Fuērō</b> . . . . .	35
X. Nouns. Neuter Stems . . . . .	40
XI. Adjectives. Consonant Stems . . . . .	43
XII. Inflection of Verbs. Consonant Stems . . . . .	47
XIII. Inflection of Verbs. Consonant Stems ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	50



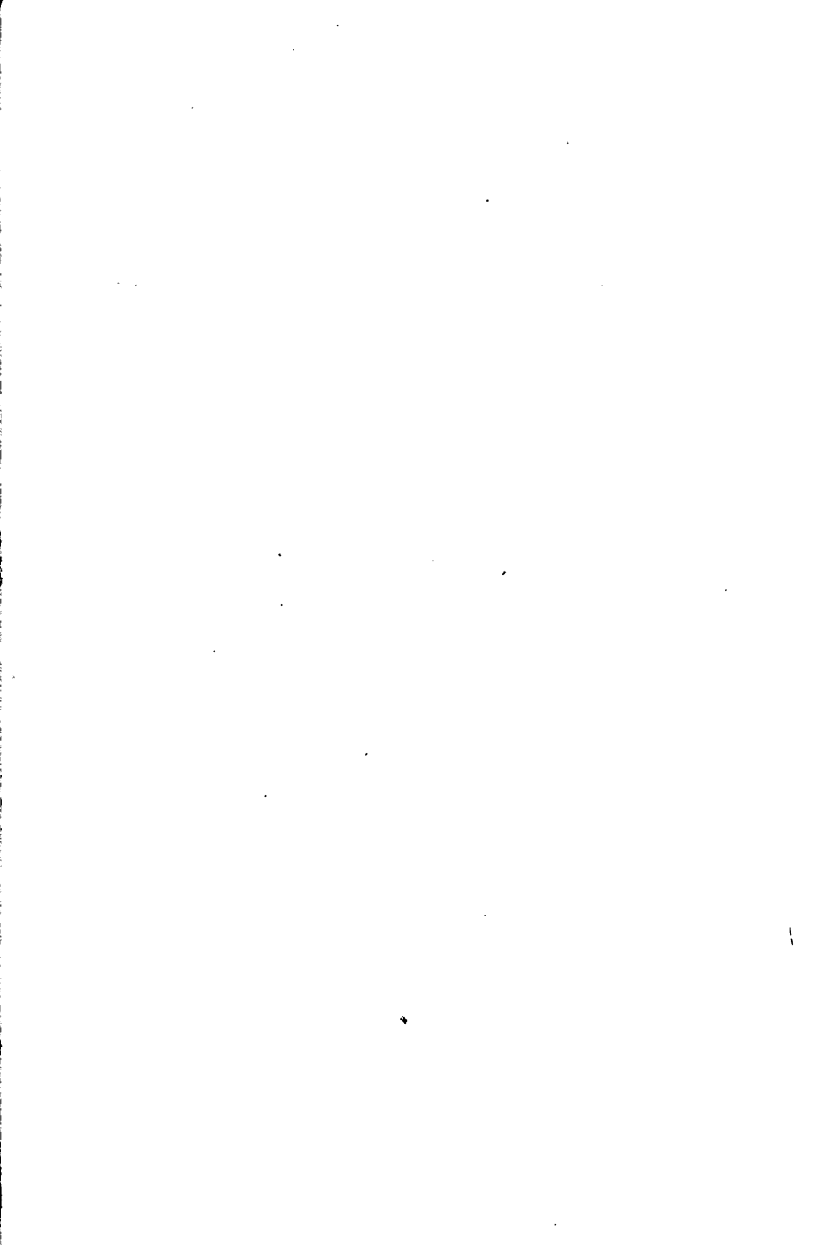
	PAGE
STUDY XIV. Nouns. Stems in I. <b>Šim</b> . . .	52
XV. Adjectives. Stems in I. <b>Essēm</b> . . .	57
XVI. Nouns. Stems in U. <b>Fuērīm, fuissēm</b> . . .	60
XVII. Nouns. Stems in O and E . . .	63
XXVIII. Nouns. Stems in O . . .	68
XIX. Adjectives. Stems in O and A . . .	71
XX. Numerical Adjectives . . .	76
XXI. Peculiar Inflections . . .	79
XXII. Consonant Verbs. Perfect Stems. Sub- junctive Mood . . .	84
XXIII. Verbs. Stems in a Long Vowel — <b>Ī, Ē, Ā</b> . . .	88
XXIV. Verbs. Stems in a Short Vowel — <b>Ē, Ā</b> . . .	93
XXV. Verbs. Present Stems . . .	96
XXVI. Verbs. Imperative Mood. Adjective Forms . . .	102
XXVII. Verbs. Noun Forms . . .	108
XXVIII. Verbs. Deponents and Old Forms . . .	112
XXIX. Pronouns . . .	120
XXX. Particles . . .	125

### PART III.

HOW LATIN WORDS ARE MADE FROM OTHERS . . .	131
STUDY XXXI. The Derivation of Words . . .	133
XXXII. The Derivation of Latin Nouns . . .	138
XXXIII. The Derivation of Latin Adjectives . . .	153
XXXIV. The Derivation of Latin Verbs . . .	158
XXXV. The Formation of Compound Words in Latin . . .	162

PART IV.

	PAGE
HOW ENGLISH WORDS ARE MADE FROM LATIN WORDS .	169
PRELIMINARY . . . . .	171
STUDY XXXVI. Latin Words used in English .	174
XXXVII. Latin Stems used as English Words	187
XXXVIII. English Words which have come from Latin through the French .	205
XXXIX. Coined Words. . . . .	212
LATIN ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	215
ENGLISH LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	222
INDEX . . . . .	225





## TO TEACHERS.

---

THE author has no desire to instruct teachers. He assumes that they understand their profession, and it is his wish merely to supply them with material for work. The following hints, then, are merely such as relate to this particular work, and may, of course, be disregarded if desired.

1. The studies are planned somewhat with reference to a natural grouping of topics, and have no relation to the length of lessons which may be assigned.

2. It will be seen that the customary artificial division of inflection into the five "declensions" of nouns and the four "conjugations" of verbs is disregarded in favor of the natural system of inflection by stems. It is the opinion of the author that in order to understand Latin etymologies, whether of Latin words or of English words derived from the Latin, it is necessary for the student to become accustomed to the incessant use of stems, endings, and the phonetic changes resulting from their combination.

3. The brief phonetic analysis of the Latin alphabet is made the basis of the whole work. It is not difficult even for quite young students, and should be mastered and applied at every step. If teachers

prefer to disregard this suggestion, no doubt the subject can be taught; but there will be quite different results from those intended.

4. It will be helpful if students are encouraged to find numerous English derivatives, besides those noted in the book, from the various Latin stems.

5. The paradigms of inflection cannot be repeated too many times. They should be practised as one does the piano, until their correct and rapid reproduction, whether oral or written, becomes a second nature.

6. A good unabridged dictionary should be accessible, and students should be induced to refer to it constantly. Later, they should become accustomed to use Skeat's "Etymological Dictionary;" and a Latin dictionary will also be invaluable.

## INTRODUCTION.

### WHY EVERYBODY SHOULD KNOW SOMETHING OF LATIN.

IF one examines the words in an English dictionary, it will be seen that many of them are borrowed from other languages. "Wigwam" is from an American Indian dialect. The early settlers in Massachusetts had no word of their own to indicate the rude structure in which the savages were sheltered, and so tried to imitate the Indian name. "Lasso" is a Spanish word, learned by the hunters and cowboys from the Mexicans. "Depot" we have taken from the French as a convenient term to denote a place for storage. It is frequently used in the United States as applied to a railway station, although it is not so appropriate in that sense as the word "station." "Aquiline" is from the Latin word "aquila," which means an eagle; an aquiline nose is one curved like an eagle's beak. And so we might easily find words taken from a variety of other languages, — German, Turkish, Portuguese, Russian, Chinese, Dutch, and many more.

Other languages borrow foreign words, but English is peculiar in the fact that it has so many. In fact, a decided majority of the words in one of our dictionaries are not English in their origin. Authors differ

very widely in the proportion of borrowed words which they use; but all English writers employ a considerable number, — sometimes as many as two-thirds.

About four-fifths of all the borrowed words in our language we find come from the Latin, either directly or through the French. The French language, indeed, consists almost wholly of Latin words; and the same thing is true of Spanish, Italian, and Portuguese. So if we take a word from any of those tongues, we are pretty apt to get one which was originally Latin.

To understand how it has come about that we use so many Latin words in English, we need to know a few facts from history. It is not hard to see why the Massachusetts people adopted "wigwam" from the Indians, or why the cowboys adopted "lasso" from the Mexicans. And it is plain that the number of words likely to be borrowed from any particular language will depend on how much one comes in contact with it, or how important it is in the many interests of daily life.

If so many of our words are Latin, then, it must be that at some time or other the Latin language played a very prominent part in the development of the English people. And that is precisely what was the case.

At the beginning of the Christian era Rome was the capital of a great empire which covered nearly all of Europe, — all which at that time was settled and civilized, — besides Western Asia and Northern Africa. The Roman language was the official tongue, and was

the common form of speech in Italy and in nearly all the provinces of Rome in Europe; and this language was Latin. Latin was used in the courts of law and in a large part of the popular literature. When the Christian church became established, in the western part of the empire the language used in the church services, in the hymns, the ritual of worship, and the sermons, was Latin.

After a few centuries, the great Roman empire was broken up. Barbarous tribes, speaking German dialects, overran Western Europe, and founded kingdoms on the ruins of the empire. But these Germans mingled with the Romans, whom they had conquered, and learned to talk Latin. And from the corrupted and Germanized Latin speech which resulted have come the French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages.

Meanwhile the Christian church continued to hold its services in Latin, as the Roman Catholic church does to-day. Learned men used Latin as the language of science and literature. And laws were written in Latin. Indeed, Latin was the tongue in which people of different nations conversed and in which international negotiations were carried on, until within the last two or three hundred years.

The original English were Germans who drove out or exterminated the people whom they found in England. And these English, "Anglo-Saxons" they are commonly called, spoke a pure German dialect. But in the eleventh century the Normans conquered the English, and after that for a long time the king





and his nobles, and the principal church officers, in short all the ruling class, were Normans. Now the Normans were French, and they continued to speak French long after their settlement in England. But after three or four centuries the two nations, Normans and English, became quite thoroughly mingled, and the French language gradually ceased to be used.

The English which took its place, however, naturally contained a very large number of French words. It must be remembered that the Normans formed the wealthy and ruling class, while the old English, the Saxons, were the middle class and the peasants. So we might expect to find French words used for such ideas as would be common in the great castle, while the peasant would still keep to his blunt Anglo-Saxon. Thus "ox" was the homely name given the animal by the Saxon herdsmen. But when the ox was slaughtered and carried to the castle to be eaten, it was called by the Norman name of "beef."

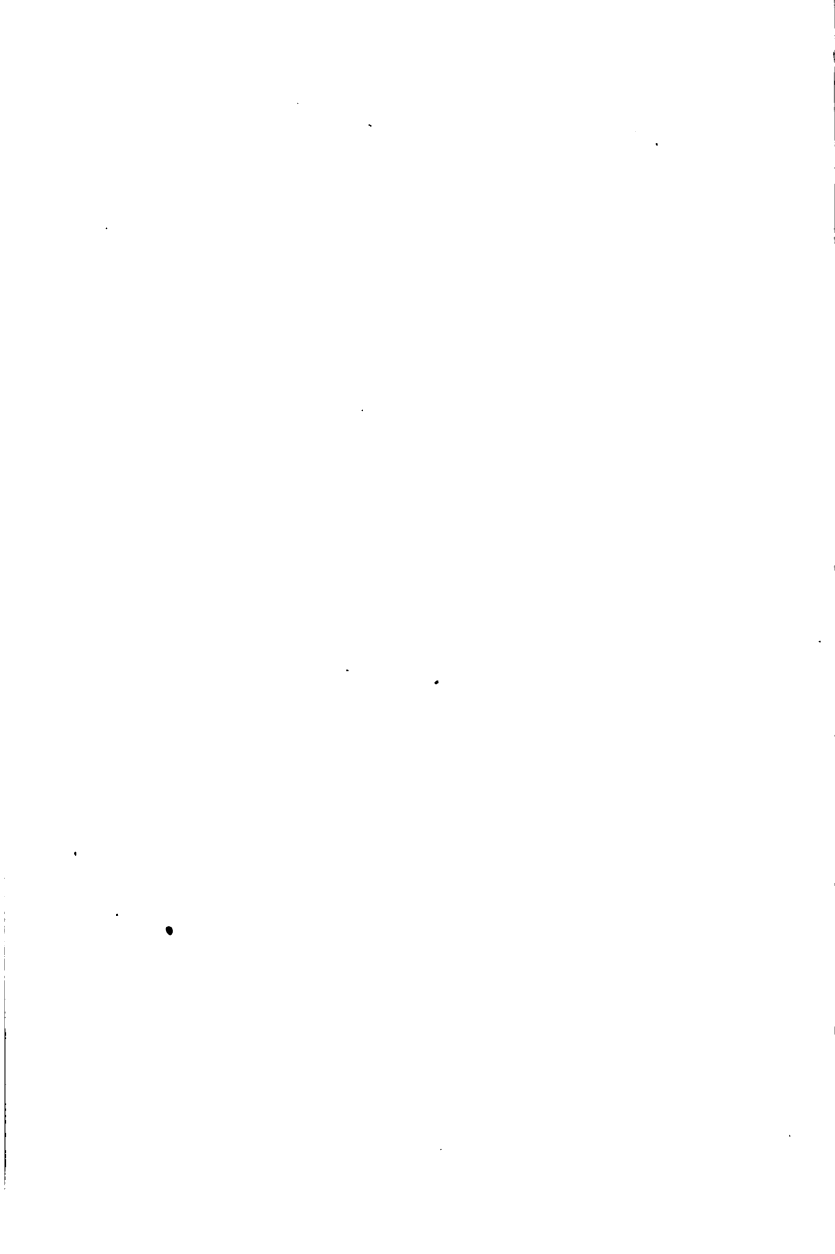
But, as has been said, the French language used by the Normans was only a form of Latin. And so there came into English a large number of Latin words through the Norman French. And about the same number have been taken directly from Latin.

So it is that while the basis of English is a German dialect, not very different from what we call Low Dutch, still, more than half its words came from the Latin language.

Now these Latin words are usually rather long ones. They generally consist of some simple part, called the root, and a variety of syllables prefixed or added.

It will be seen that *diction*, *dictate*, *dictation*, *indict*, *predict*, *predicate*, for instance, have the root *dic*-. One who is familiar with Latin recognizes *dic*- as the root of a Latin verb meaning "to say." So it is plain that all these English words must have some meaning connected with "saying." And a moment's reflection will show this to be correct. The other syllables in these words are also Latin, each with a meaning easily understood by the Latin scholar.

Surely an intelligent knowledge of the language we use is a valuable thing to have. But this large element of the language which comes from the Latin cannot be understood unless one knows something of that language. How much must one know? Of course if it is possible to study Latin for years, so as to know very much about it, it will be so much the better. But if that cannot be done, it is at least possible to become familiar with Latin modes of inflection and derivation, and to learn a number of the more ordinary Latin words. In this way a flood of light is poured on the meaning of a large part of our English speech.



**PART I.**

**HOW LATIN WORDS ARE FORMED.**





# THE LATIN IN ENGLISH.

## PART I.

### HOW LATIN WORDS ARE FORMED.



#### STUDY I. — THE ALPHABET.

1. The sounds of which the Latin language is composed are represented to the eye by the same letters which form the English alphabet, except that the Romans had no *w*.

The English alphabet, indeed, is simply borrowed from the Latin.

2. The vowels (*litterae vocales, voice letters*) are *a, e, i, o, u, and y*.

The sounds of the vowels are as follows:

- a* as *a* in *father*. *ah*
- e* " *a* " *fate*. *ay*
- i* " *i* " *machine*. *ee*
- o* " *o* " *hole*. *oh*
- u* " *oo* " *moon*. *oo*

*y* has no similar sound in English. It was like the German *ü*, or the French *u*.

Some prefer to pronounce Latin as they do English. Students are advised, however, to learn the Roman pronunciation, as above and in 3, 4.

3. What the Romans called the *quantity* of a vowel is unknown in English. We distinguish between different sounds of the same vowel, as of *a* in *hate*, *hat*, *father*, *all*. But we pay no attention to the relative time it takes to make these various sounds.

The Romans, however, gave one, and only one, sound to any vowel. The Latin *a*, for instance, had always the sound of the English *a* in *father*. But this one sound of a vowel they made in two ways: either protracting it, thus making it *long*, or clipping it off, thus making it *short*. This distinction as to the length of time taken in sounding a vowel they called *quantity*.

The quantity of a vowel, then, is the relative time taken in sounding it.

With reference to quantity, vowels are either long or short. A long vowel should take twice the time of a short vowel.

In printing, quantity is indicated by a mark over the vowel; e.g. long *a* is printed *ā*, and short *a*, *ă*. A vowel which may be either long or short is called *common*, and has both marks; e.g. *ǣ*.

4. The remaining letters of the alphabet are consonants (*consonantes*, *sounding with*).

Their sounds can be made only *with* vowel sounds.

The consonants in Latin have the same sound as in English, with the following exceptions:

*c* and *g* are always hard (*i.e.* *c* as in *cat*, *g* as in *gas*).

*j* has the sound of *y*, and *v* nearly that of *w*.

*s* is always sharp (as in *son*; never like *s* in *wisdom*).

*b* before *s* has the sound of *p*.

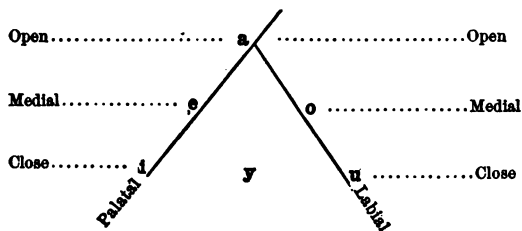
*z* has the sound of *ds* (or perhaps of *sd*).

*z* is not really a Latin letter. The Romans borrowed it from Greek.

## 5. PHONETIC ANALYSIS OF THE ALPHABET.

The following table presents a classification of the letters, arranged with reference to the position of the vocal organs in sounding them. The student should learn it carefully, making sure that he understands just the position of the organs of speech in sounding each letter (as explained in 6).

### I. Scale of Vowels.



### II. Scale of Consonants.

	PALATALS.	LINGUALS.	LABIALS.
1. Semivowels, <i>sonant</i>	j		v
2. Nasals, <i>sonant</i>	n (= ng)	n	m
3. Liquids, <i>sonant</i>		l, r	
4. Spirants, <i>surd</i>	h	s	f
5. Mutes, { <i>sonant</i>	g	d	b
{ <i>surd</i>	c (k, q)	t	p
6. Double Consonants,			

x = cs OR gs

z = ds (or perhaps sd)



## 6. REMARKS ON THE PHONETIC ANALYSIS.

Articulate sounds are made by a current of air (the breath) which passes from the lungs through the vocal cords and is modified by the palate, tongue, teeth, and lips.

*a* is called the *open* vowel, because in sounding it the jaws and lips are wide open. It will be seen that *e* is then sounded by partially closing the jaws, and *i* by more nearly closing them; *o* by partially closing the lips, and *u* by almost closing them. Hence *i* and *u* are called *close* vowels, and *e* and *o* *medial* vowels. *y* has the sound of *i*, with the lips held in position to sound *u*, — like *u* in French or *ü* in German.

Again, in sounding *a*, *e*, *i*, the breath is thrown against successive parts of the palate. Hence these vowels are called *palatal*. In sounding *o* and *u* the breath is thrown out directly through the lips. Hence these vowels are called *labial* (from the Latin *labium*, *lip*).

By continuing the successive contraction of the vocal organs, the *consonants* are formed in the order of the table until the surd mutes are reached.

In sounding the consonants the breath is modified, as has been said, by one or more of the parts of the mouth. Those that result from throwing the breath against the palate are called *palatals*. Those in making which the tongue is especially active are called *linguals* (*lingua*, *tongue*). Those whose sound is formed by the use of either (or both) of the lips are called *labials* (*labium*, *lip*).

The *sonant* consonants (*sonans*, *sounding*) are made by expelling the breath forcibly.

In the *surds* (*surdus*, *not heard*) the breath is emitted quietly.

The *semivowels*, *j* (= *y* in English) and *v* (= *w* in English), are merely the vowels *i* and *u* used to begin a syllable; *e.g.* *ejus*, *veni*. Thus the close vowels can hardly be distinguished from the most open consonants. Indeed, in many Latin texts the forms *j* and *v* never occur, *i* and *u* being always written.

The *nasals* (**nasus**, *nose*) are sounded by expelling the breath through the nose. **n** in certain positions has the sound of *ng* in English; e.g. **ancora**, *anchor* (pronounced as if spelled **angcora**).

The *liquids* (**liquidus**, *fluid*) are so called because the breath rolls so smoothly from the mouth in forming them.

The *spirants* (**spirans**, *breathing*) are made by breathing sharply against the palate (**h**); more gently over the tip of the tongue through the teeth (**s**); and between the upper teeth and the lower lip (**f**).

The *mutes* are so called because in the process of sounding them the breath is entirely stopped by closing the organs of speech.

The double consonant, **xx**, was frequently used, but was merely a device of the scribes to save writing **cs**. It has the sound of those two letters (like *ks* in *books* or *x* in *box*).

**z** the Romans rarely used (see 4).

## 7.

## DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is a combination of two vowels with but one sound. The separate sounds glide together and unite.

The ones commonly used are **ae**, **oe**, **au**, **eu**.

Of the two vowels in a diphthong the second, if a palatal, must not stand higher in the scale (5, I.), i.e. must not be more nearly open, than the first; if the second vowel is a labial, it must be lower in the scale than the first.

From this it will be seen that there can be no diphthong ending in **a**. There is also no diphthong ending in **o**.

The diphthongs beginning with **a** (open diphthongs) are **ae**, **ai**, **au**.

The labial diphthongs are **oe**, **oi**, **ui**.

The palatal diphthong is **eu**.

The sound of a diphthong is merely that of its component vowels run together. The English equivalents are about as follows :

ae } like  $\bar{i}$  in *fire*.  
ai }

au "  $\bar{o}$  " *owl*.

oe } "  $\bar{o}y$  " *boy*.  
oi }

ui "  $\bar{w}i$  " *will*.

eu not quite like any English sound. The separate sounds of e and u are merely run together.



## STUDY II.—PHONETIC CHANGES.

8. Words are formed from other words: (1) by prefixing a syllable or group of syllables, *e.g. prevent*; (2) by adding a syllable or group of syllables, *e.g. amusement, walketh*; (3) by joining two words, *e.g. steam-boat*.

A syllable or group of syllables prefixed is called a *prefix*.

A syllable or group of syllables added is called a *suffix*.

A word formed by joining two words is called a *compound* word.

9. In joining a prefix or a suffix to a simple word, and in forming compounds, it will often happen that sounds come in collision which are not easy to

articulate one immediately after the other, or which have a disagreeable sound. In such cases one of three things is usually done: (1) one of the sounds is omitted; or (2) one is changed; or (3) both are changed.

In the word *allude* the prefix is *ad*. But *adludé* would be awkward to pronounce. So we say *allude* — changing *d* to *l*.

These changes are called *phonetic* (*i.e. sound*) changes, and in writing and printing are indicated by a change of letters.

The usual purpose of phonetic changes, as explained above, is to secure ease of utterance. Usage has determined that within certain limits such changes are convenient and useful. But in many cases people make phonetic changes, especially the omission of sounds, from mere carelessness and laziness: *e.g.* “goïn’” for “going.” Those who wish to speak pure and elegant English are on their guard against an articulation so slovenly.

10. (1) There are many ways of making phonetic change — more in Latin than in English. These will be explained from time to time as they become necessary in use.

(2) But besides the changes that result from the collision of sounds (9), the Romans often made phonetic changes in the final syllable of a word to which no suffix was attached: *e.g.* the stem (18 a) *nomín-*, used as a word without a suffix, became *nómen*, *name* (from the stem we have the English words *nominal*, *nominate*, etc.).

**STUDY III. — WORDS.**

11. A word may be considered with reference to the sounds that compose it, or with reference to its meaning and use in a sentence.

**WORDS CONSIDERED PHONETICALLY.****1. Syllables.**

12. A Latin word consists of one or more syllables; *e.g. ad, ara*. Each syllable must have one vowel or diphthong, and only one; and may have one or more consonants. That is to say, there are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are vowels or diphthongs; *e.g. a-ma-vis-tis*. And there are no silent letters in Latin.

In dividing a word into syllables, the following rules are observed:

a. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second; *e.g. ma-num*.

b. If two consonants stand together between two vowels, one usually goes with each; *e.g. op-ti-ma*.

c. If three consonants stand together between two vowels, the division usually falls after the first two; *e.g. cunc-tus*. But if the second be a mute and the third a liquid, the division is before the last two; *e.g. cas-tra*.

13. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*. The next syllable before the ultima is the *penult*. The next syllable before the penult is the *antepenult*.

## 2. Quantity.

14. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time taken in pronouncing it.

Syllables are either *long* or *short*. A long syllable takes longer time to pronounce than does a short one.

A long vowel is supposed to take about twice as long to pronounce as does a short one. The relative length of syllables must be less exact, as there is no uniformity in the number of articulations they may contain. The more letters in a syllable, the longer it will take to sound it (there are no silent letters in Latin, 12).

Still, one long syllable is considered about equal to two short ones.

15. The quantity of a syllable depends either on the quantity of its vowel or on the character of the letters following its vowel. The first of these two is called *natural* quantity; the second, quantity by *position*.

A syllable is long by *nature* if it contains either a diphthong or a long vowel; *e.g.* the first syllable of **au-rum**, **frē-gi**.

A syllable is short by *nature* if it contains a short vowel; *e.g.* the first syllable of **că-do**.

A syllable is long by *position* if its vowel is followed by two consonants (except a mute and a liquid), or a double consonant; *e.g.* the first syllables of **ad-do**, **dux**. But in **pătrīs**, **a** is short.

A syllable is short by *position* if its vowel is immediately followed by another vowel; *e.g.* the first syllable of **vi-a**.

In determining quantity, **h** is not considered at all; *e.g.* in **tra-ho**, the first syllable is short by position.

The natural quantity of syllables can only be learned by the pupil from a dictionary or from a knowledge of inflection, derivation and composition. Quantity by position may readily be determined by inspecting a word.

### 3. *Accent.*

16. The accent of a word is a stress of voice on one syllable more than on others; *e.g.* the first syllable of the English word *quán-ti-ty*.

A Latin word never has more than one syllable accented.

In a word of two syllables the accent falls on the first; *e.g.* *că'do*.

In a polysyllable the accent falls on the penult, *if that is long*; *e.g.* *in-ci'-do*, *ob-tún-do*. But if the penult is *short*, the antepenult is accented; *e.g.* *ob'-vī-am*, *ad'-dū-cit*.

### WORDS CONSIDERED AS TO THEIR MEANING AND USE.

17. With reference to their meaning and use in a sentence, words are divided in Latin, just as in English, into eight classes, called usually the *parts of speech*: nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, interjections.

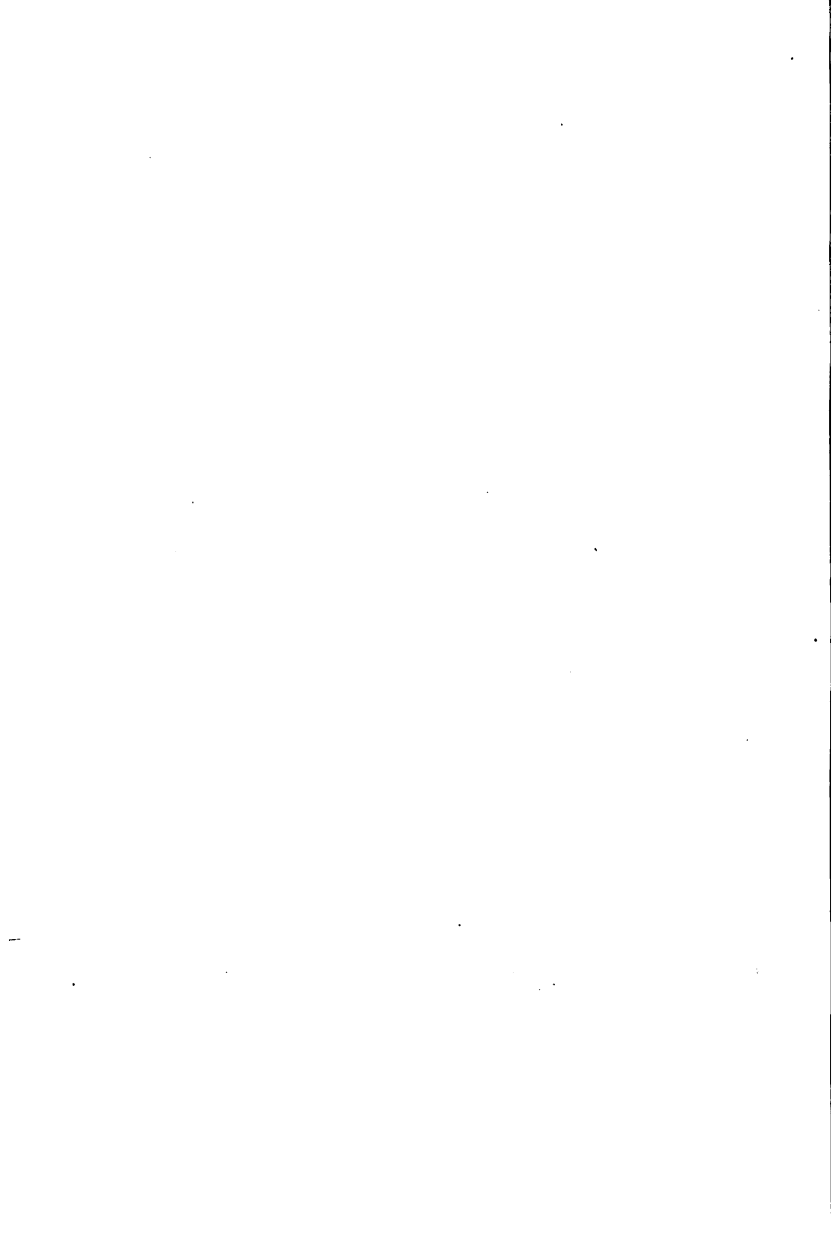
The meaning of each of these is the same in Latin as in English.

It is presumed that the student is familiar with the elements of English grammar.

**PART II.**  
**HOW LATIN WORDS ARE INFLECTED.**







## PART II.

### HOW LATIN WORDS ARE INFLECTED.



#### STUDY IV.—NOUNS. LABIAL STEMS. Sum.

18. **urbs** is a Latin noun meaning *city*. We find other forms: **urbī**, *to a city*; **urbē**, *with a city*; **urbīūm**, *of cities*; **urbībūs**, *to cities or with cities*; **urbīs**, *of a city*; **urbēs**, *cities*; **urbēm**, *a city*.

a. It is obvious that the syllable **urb** is found in all the forms, and this we call the *stem* of the word.

b. Then the other letters, which are attached to the stem, must give the different meanings. These letters we call *endings*.

c. Of the forms above given (the forms of a noun in Latin, as in English, are called *cases*), we notice that **urbs**, **urbēm**, **urbīs**, **urbī**, **urbē** have a meaning which shows them to be in the *singular* number, while **urbēs**, **urbīūm**, **urbībūs** are plainly in the *plural* number.

d. If we should study Latin sentences in which the word occurs in its various forms, we should find that the form **urbs** is used only as the *subject* of a verb, **urbēm** only as the *object* of a transitive verb or of a preposition, while **urbēs** may be used in either way.

The *subject* form is called the nominative case, as in English.

The *object* form is called in Latin the accusative case (instead of the objective case, as in English).

The other forms are always translated into English by prepositions, as in the examples.

The forms **urbis**, *of a city*, **urbium**, *of cities*, are called the genitive case. A Latin genitive may sometimes be translated by the English possessive. Thus, **urbis** may mean *city's*.

The forms **urbī**, *to a city*, **urbibus**, *to cities*, are called the dative case. A dative may also be translated by *for*. Thus, **urbī** may mean *for a city*.

The forms **urbē**, *with a city*, **urbibus**, *with cities*, are called the ablative case. An ablative may also be translated by *from*, *in*, or *by*. Thus, **urbē** may mean *from a city*, or *in a city*, or *by a city*.

An ablative, like an accusative, may be used as the object of a Latin preposition. Thus, **in urbē** means *in a city*.

1. A Latin preposition with an accusative for its object always implies motion *towards*. Thus, **in urbēm** means *into a city*; **ad urbēm** means *to a city*.

2. A Latin preposition with an ablative for its object often implies motion *from* or rest *in* an object. Thus, **ab urbē** means *away from a city*; **in urbē** means *in a city*.

19. If we take the endings of the various forms of **urbs** from the stem and arrange them in a table, it will be as follows:

## FIRST TABLE OF CASE ENDINGS.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative	s }	ēs
Accusative	ēm }	
Genitive	is	iūm or ūm
Dative	i }	
Ablative	ē }	ibūs

NOTE. — This table should be committed to memory.

20. The INFLECTION of a noun is the forming of its various cases by attaching the above case endings to the stem. Thus, the stem of **urbs** we have seen to be **urb-**. Then the inflection of **urbs** is as follows:

Stem **urb-**.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative	<b>urbs</b> , city	} <b>urbēs</b> , cities
Accusative	<b>urbēm</b> , city	
Genitive	<b>urbis</b> , of a city	<b>urbium</b> , of cities
Dative	<b>urbi</b> , to or for a city	} <b>urbibus</b> , to or for or with (etc.) cities
Ablative	<b>urbē</b> , with (etc.) a city	

a. Gender in Latin does not depend so strictly on sex as in English. Thus, **urbs** is feminine, while in English we call *city* neuter.

Neuter stems in Latin are inflected somewhat differently from stems which are masculine or feminine (39).

b. Stems, for convenience, are named according to the last letter. The last letter of the stem **urb-** is **b**.

Now **b** is a consonant. So **urb-** is a consonant stem.

But among consonants **b** is a mute (5, II.). So **urb-** is a mute stem.

And among mutes **b** is a labial. So **urb-** is a labial stem.

All masculine and feminine consonant stems and masculine and feminine vowel stems which end in **i** are inflected like **urba**, by attaching the endings of the table in 19.

There are some variations in the different classes of stems. These will be noticed in the proper place.

c. Then, if one knows the stem of a Latin noun and its gender, it is quite easy to inflect it, by merely attaching the proper case endings.

**21.** The last vowel in a stem is called the *stem vowel*; e.g. in the stem **princĭp-**, the stem vowel is **i**.

In the nominative case singular the stem vowel is sometimes changed. Thus, in that case we often find **e** instead of a short **i** (**ĭ**) in the stem.

The stem **princĭp-** has for the nominative **princeps**. The inflection is as follows:

NOTE.—Abbreviations will be used: m., f., n., for masculine, feminine, and neuter; Sing., Plur., for singular and plural; N., Ac., G., D., Ab., for the names of the cases.

**princeps**, m., *chief*; stem **princĭp-**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>princeps</b>	<b>princĭpēs</b>
Ac.	<b>princĭpēm</b>	
G.	<b>princĭpis</b>	<b>princĭpūm</b>
D.	<b>princĭpī</b>	<b>princĭpībūs</b>
Ab.	<b>princĭpē</b>	

Notice that in the genitive plural the ending is **ūm**. This is used in most nouns rather than **īum**. In the Lists of Words those which have **īum** will be indicated.

## 22.

## LIST OF WORDS.

1. *Labial Mute Stems.*

<b>urbs</b> , f., <i>city</i> ,	stem <b>urb-</b> (G. Plur. <b>iŭm</b> )
<b>stirps</b> , f., <i>stem</i> ,	" <b>stirp-</b>
<b>trabs</b> , f., <i>beam</i> ,	" <b>trăb-</b>
<b>forceps</b> , m. f., <i>pair of tongs</i> ,	" <b>forcîp-</b>
<b>mŭniceps</b> , m. f., <i>a townsman</i> ,	" <b>mŭnicip-</b>
<b>particeps</b> , m. f., <i>a companion</i> ,	" <b>particip-</b>
<b>princeps</b> , m. f., <i>chief</i> ,	" <b>princip-</b>
<b>ădeps</b> , m. f., <i>fat</i> ,	" <b>ădîp-</b>

2. *Prepositions.*

**ăd**, *to, towards*

**in** { *into* (with an accusative)  
       *in* (with an ablative)

**ă, ăb**, *from, away from* (with an ablative)

NOTE. — **ă** is used if the following word begins with a consonant; **ăb**, if the following word begins with a vowel.

3. *Miscellaneous.*

<b>puēr</b> , <i>boy</i>	<b>vĕnît</b> , <i>comes</i>
<b>puellă</b> , <i>girl</i>	<b>it</b> , <i>goes</i>

## 23.

THE VERB **Sŭm**, *I am*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>sŭm</b> , <i>I am</i>	<b>sŭmŭs</b> , <i>we are</i>
2d    "	<b>ēs</b> , <i>thou art</i>	<b>estis</b> , <i>you are</i>
3d    "	<b>est</b> , <i>he is</i>	<b>sunt</b> , <i>they are</i>

## EXERCISES.

1. Puēr est in urbē. 2. Trābēs sunt in urbē. 3. Puellā ad urbēm vēnit. 4. Puēr ab urbē it. 5. Puēr in urbēm it. 6. Trābēs principūm. 7. Urbēs participūm. 8. Mūnicipēs sunt participēs. 9. Puēr ā mūnicipibūs vēnit. 10. Trābībūs, mūnicipī, forcipē, stirpēm.

NOTES.—1. The above exercises should be translated into English.

2. The case and number of each noun should be pointed out.

3. The full inflection of each labial stem in the list of words should be written out.

## REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

1. The Latin stem *urb-*, *city*, we find in many English words. *Urban* means relating to a city. *Urbane* implies the courtesy which should belong to one who has been polished by the constant associations of city life. *Suburb* and *suburban* are at once suggested. In these words the Latin prefix *sūb*, *under*, gives a meaning of something attached to a city and subordinate to it.

2. *Stirp-*, *stem*, we find in *extirpate*. The nominative *forceps* is used without change as the name of a dentist's implement. *Mūnicip-*, *a townsman*, gives us *municipal*, *municipality*, and from *particip-* come *participant*, *participate*. *Adip-*, *fat*, we recognize in *adipose*.

3. *Princip-*, *chief*, is a stem in *principal*, *principality*, *principle*.

## STUDY V.—NOUNS. LINGUAL STEMS. Ěřam.

24. Noun stems which end in a lingual mute (*t*, *d*) are inflected by attaching the case endings of the table in 19.

The combinations *ts*, *ds*, were displeasing to the Roman ear, and are rather difficult to articulate. Accordingly in the nominative singular the lingual was dropped before *s*.

Stem *lāpīd-*, *m.*, *stone*.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<i>lāpīs</i> , a stone	} <i>lāpīdēs</i> , stones
Ac.	<i>lāpīdēm</i> , a stone	
G.	<i>lāpīdīs</i> , of a stone	<i>lāpīdŭm</i> , of stones
D.	<i>lāpīdī</i> , to a stone	} <i>lāpīdībŭs</i> , to or with stones
Ab.	<i>lāpīdē</i> , with a stone	

Stem *mīlit-*, *m.*, *soldier*.

[For *e* in the nominative singular, see 21.]

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<i>mīlēs</i> , a soldier	} <i>mīlitēs</i> , soldiers
Ac.	<i>mīlitēm</i> , a soldier	
G.	<i>mīlitīs</i> , of a soldier	<i>mīlitŭm</i> , of soldiers
D.	<i>mīlitī</i> , to a soldier	} <i>mīlitībŭs</i> , to or with soldiers
Ab.	<i>mīlitē</i> , with a soldier	

## 25.

## LIST OF WORDS.

<i>cīvītās</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>state</i> ,	stem <i>cīvītāt-</i>
<i>cālāmītās</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>disaster</i> ,	" <i>cālāmītāt-</i>
<i>nēpōs</i> , <i>m.</i> ,	" <i>nēpōt-</i>
<i>virtŭs</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>virtue</i> ,	" <i>virtūt-</i>



sālūs, f., <i>safety</i> ,	stem	sālūt-
quiēs, f., <i>quiet</i> ,	"	quiēt-
pēs, m., <i>foot</i> ,	"	pēd-
custōs, m. f., <i>guard</i> ,	"	custōd-
laus, f., <i>praise</i> ,	"	laud-
hērēs, m. f., <i>heir</i> ,	"	hērēd-
ars, f., <i>art</i> ,	"	art-
nox, f., <i>night</i> ,	"	noct-
dens, m., <i>tooth</i> ,	"	dent-
mons, m., <i>mountain</i> ,	"	mont-
pons, m., <i>bridge</i> ,	"	pont-
fons, m., <i>fountain</i> ,	"	font-

NOTE. — In the last six words the G. Plur. has the ending *iūm*. See 21.

ē, *ex*, *from, out of* (with an ablative)  
 cūm, *in company with* (with an ablative)  
 hābēt, *has*  
 hābent, *have*

## 26. THE VERB Sūm, *I am*.

INDICATIVE MOOD, IMPERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	ērām, <i>I was</i>	ērāmūs, <i>we were</i>
2d "	ērās, <i>thou wert</i>	ērātīs, <i>you were</i>
3d "	ērāt, <i>he was</i>	erant, <i>they were</i>

### EXERCISES.

1. Quiēs in ciuitatē ērāt. 2. Milēs est in urbē. 3. Lāpīdēs urbiūm sunt sālūtī (*for safety*). 4. Virtūs est laudī ciuitātī. 5. Custōdēs quiētīs, pēdēs custōdūm. 6. Puēr cūm militē vēnīt. 7. Ērant (*there were*) laudēs militībūs (*dative case*). 8. Pēdūm, laudībūs, custōdē, hērēdībūs. 9. Puēr sālūtēm hābēt. 10. Militēs pēdēs hābent.

1. The feet of the beams. 2. The guards of the cities. 3. Quiet in the state. 4. The guard comes with the chief. 5. The chiefs have guards.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

1. The stem **lāpīd-** is found in *lapidary*, a worker in precious stones. From **mīlīt-** come *military*, *militia*. **Cālāmītāt-** is *calamity*, **quiēt-** is *quiet*. **Sālūt-** gives us *salute*, which originally meant *to wish one safety*; **pēd-** occurs in *pedal* and *pedestrian*; **custōd-** is about the same as *custody*; **laud-** is made into a verb, as *laud*, and is found in the noun *laudation* and in the adjective *laudatory*.

2. It will be seen that many English words in which these Latin stems appear have other letters or syllables. Some of these are English. Others are Latin; such a word as *laudation*, for instance, coming directly from a Latin noun stem, **laudātiōn-**, which is itself ultimately derived from the stem **laud-**. The method by which these derivatives are formed, and the force of the various syllables, will be explained later. All that is necessary now is to notice the English words in which the Latin stems occur, and the similarity in meaning.

## STUDY VI.—NOUNS. PALATAL STEMS. Ěř.

27. Noun stems which end in a palatal mute (**c**, **g**) are inflected by attaching the case endings of the table in 19.

The combinations **cs**, **gs** the Romans indicated by writing, in place of the two letters, the single letter **x**. Thus, instead of **arcs**, they wrote **arx**.

Stem **rĕg-**, m., *king*.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>rex</b> , <i>king</i>	}	<b>rĕgĕs</b> , <i>kings</i>
Ac.	<b>rĕgĕm</b> , <i>king</i>		
G.	<b>rĕgĭs</b> , <i>of a king</i>		<b>rĕgŭm</b> , <i>of kings</i>
D.	<b>rĕgĭ</b> , <i>to a king</i>	}	<b>rĕgĭbŭs</b> , <i>to or with kings</i>
Ab.	<b>rĕgĕ</b> , <i>with a king</i>		

Stem **jŭdic-**, m., *judge*.

[For **e** in the N. Sing., see 21.]

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>jŭdex</b> , <i>judge</i>	}	<b>jŭdicĕs</b> , <i>judges</i>
Ac.	<b>jŭdicĕm</b> , <i>judge</i>		
G.	<b>jŭdicĭs</b> , <i>of a judge</i>		<b>jŭdicŭm</b> , <i>of judges</i>
D.	<b>jŭdicĭ</b> , <i>to a judge</i>	}	<b>jŭdicĭbŭs</b> , <i>to or with judges</i>
Ab.	<b>jŭdicĕ</b> , <i>with a judge</i>		

Stem **rādic-**, root.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>rādex</b> , <i>root</i>	}	<b>rādicĕs</b> , <i>roots</i>
Ac.	<b>rādicĕm</b> , <i>root</i>		
G.	<b>rādicĭs</b> , <i>of a root</i>		<b>rādicŭm</b> , <i>of roots</i>
D.	<b>rādicĭ</b> , <i>to a root</i>	}	<b>rādicĭbŭs</b> , <i>to or with roots</i>
Ab.	<b>rādicĕ</b> , <i>with a root</i>		

## 28. LIST OF WORDS.

<b>crux</b> , f., <i>cross</i> ,	stem	<b>crŭo-</b>
<b>pax</b> , f., <i>peace</i> ,	"	<b>păc-</b>
<b>dux</b> , m. f., <i>leader</i> ,	"	<b>dŭo-</b>
<b>lux</b> , f., <i>light</i> ,	"	<b>lŭo-</b>
<b>ăpex</b> , m., <i>summit</i> ,	"	<b>ăpŭo-</b>
<b>sŭlex</b> , m. f., <i>flint</i> ,	"	<b>sŭlŭo-</b>
<b>index</b> , m. f., <i>a sign</i> ,	"	<b>indŭo-</b>
<b>jŭdex</b> , m. f., <i>judge</i> ,	"	<b>jŭdŭo-</b>
<b>artifex</b> , m. f., <i>artificer</i> ,	"	<b>artifŭo-</b>
<b>pontifex</b> , m. f., <i>high priest</i> ,	"	<b>pontifŭo-</b>
<b>vox</b> , f., <i>voice</i> ,	"	<b>vŭo-</b>
<b>nŭtrix</b> , f., <i>a nurse</i> ,	"	<b>nŭtrŭo-</b>
<b>rădix</b> , f., <i>root</i> ,	"	<b>rădŭo-</b>
<b>grex</b> , m., <i>crowd, flock</i> ,	"	<b>grĕg-</b>
<b>rex</b> , m., <i>king</i> ,	"	<b>rĕg-</b>
<b>lex</b> , f., <i>law</i> ,	"	<b>lĕg-</b>

## THE VERB Sŭm, I am.

## INDICATIVE MOOD, FUTURE TENSE.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>ērŏ</b> , <i>I shall be</i>	<b>ērĭmŭs</b> , <i>we shall be</i>
2d "	<b>ērĭs</b> , <i>thou shalt be</i>	<b>ērĭtĭs</b> , <i>you will be</i>
3d "	<b>ērĭt</b> , <i>he will be</i>	<b>ērunt</b> , <i>they will be</i>
<b>dăt</b> , ( <i>he</i> ) <i>gives</i>	<b>sĕd</b> , <i>but</i>	
<b>dant</b> , ( <i>they</i> ) <i>give</i>	<b>nŏn</b> , <i>not</i>	
<b>ĕt</b> , <i>and</i>	<b>dĕ</b> , <i>about</i> (with an ablative)	

## EXERCISES.

1. Dux ĕrăt ĭn urbĕ. 2. Jŭdex lĕgĕs dant. 3. Vox rĕgĭs ĕrĭt lex. 4. Lĕgĭbŭs, grĕgŭm, artifĭcĭbŭs. 5. Dŭcĕs laudĕm jŭdicĭbŭs dant. 6. Pontĭfex ĕrăt civĭtătĭs vox. 7. Rĕgĕs

custōdēs ēt dūcēs hābent. 8. Pēs montīs nōn ēst āpex.  
9. Trābēs pontīs laudī artīficiū sūt. 10. Dūcēs nōn  
rēgēs sēd custōdēs sūt.

1. Crowds are on (= *in* with an ablative) the bridges.
2. The boy comes in company with the leaders. 3. The voices of the judges and the summits of the mountains. 4. To the summit of the cross. 5. He gives praise to the kings.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

1. The stem *dūcō-* gives the word *duke*, which is now a title of nobility, but originally meant a military leader. *Ducal* comes from the same stem.

2. The nominatives *āpex* and *index* are used without change as English words. Quite a number of words we shall find thus borrowed bodily. Usually, however, it is the stem which is Anglicized, as in *duke*, above.

3. *Silicō-* is found in *silicious*, *indīcō-* in *indicate* and *indicative*, *jūdīcō-* in *judicial*, *artīfīcō-* in *artificial*, *pontīfīcō-* in *pontifical*, *rādīcō-* in *radical*, *vōcō-* in *vocal*, *rēg-* in *regal*, and *lēg-* in *legal*.

4. *Grēg-* is in the verb *aggregate*. It is also found in the adjective *egregious*. In this word *ē* means *out of*, and the stem *grēg-* means *crowd*. Hence *egregious* means *out of the crowd*, or *unusual*, *extraordinary*. The force of the final syllable *-ous* will be made clear in a later lesson.

5. *Crūc-* is seen in *crucifix*, *pācō-* in *pacific* and *pacify*. *Lucid* means *clear*, illumined by *light* (*lūcō-*).

## REMARKS ON PHONETIC CHANGES.

**29.** The noun stems thus far treated, it will be noticed, are those which end in mute consonants. Whether labials, linguals, or palatals, all alike are inflected by attaching the endings of the table in 19.

The changes which the stem undergoes in the process of inflection are very few, and occur only in the nominative singular. They are as follows:

A final lingual (**t**, **d**) of the stem is dropped when **s** is added.

Instead of **cs** or **gs**, **x** is always written.

If the stem vowel is **i**, it becomes **e**.

STUDY VII.—SYNOPSIS OF VERBS. **Ful.**

**30.** When we study Latin verbs we find that the main facts about them are much the same as in English.

There are two *voices*, active and passive, as in English.

There are three *moods*, the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative.

The indicative, as in English, shows that the meaning of the verb is asserted as a *fact*; e.g. *he walks*.

The subjunctive shows that the meaning of the verb is asserted as existing merely in *thought*; e.g. *if he were here*.

The imperative mood, as in English, shows that the meaning of the verb is put as a *command*; e.g. *go to town*.



If we examine these forms, we shall readily notice some facts :

1. In every place we see the syllable **carp-**. If we should look at this verb in the other moods and in the noun and adjective forms, we should everywhere find the only common part to be the same syllable **carp-**. Therefore it is plain that **carp-** is the stem of the verb. We shall call this hereafter the *verb stem*.

2. In the first three tenses of both voices the only common part is the verb stem **carp-**. This we may call the *present stem*.

In this verb the present stem is the same as the verb stem. In many other verbs, however, the present stem is formed by changing the verb stem.

3. In the last three tenses of the active voice the common part is the syllable **carps-**. This we may call the *perfect stem*.

In this verb, as in many others, the perfect stem is formed by adding **s** to the verb stem. We shall see presently that there are other ways also of forming perfect stems.

4. In the last three tenses of the passive voice we see that there is a compound form. **Sūm, ērām, ērō,** are the auxiliaries (as in English, I *am* nibbled). **Carptūs** is the perfect participle (we usually call it in English the *past* participle), meaning "nibbled." In **carptūs** we shall learn in the course of a few lessons that **ūs** is merely a case ending (the Latin participles and adjectives are inflected like nouns). Therefore the common verbal part is **carpt-**. This is found only in the perfect participle and in the verbal noun which



is called the "supine." So, for convenience, we may call **carpt-** the *supine stem*.

The supine stem here is formed by adding **t** to the verb stem. This is a common way.

5. Thus it appears that from the verb stem **carp-** the inflection requires three distinct stems to be formed, — the *present* stem, the *perfect* stem, and the *supine* stem.

And every fully inflected Latin verb has these three stems.

## 32.

## LIST OF WORDS.

The present and perfect indicative active and the perfect participle passive will exhibit the three stems.

<b>carpō</b> , <i>I nibble</i> ,	<b>carpsī</b> ,	<b>carptūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>carp-</b>
<b>nūbō</b> , <i>I marry</i> ,	<b>nupsī</b> ,	<b>nuptūs</b> ,	" <b>nūb-</b>
<b>scribō</b> , <i>I write</i> ,	<b>scripsī</b> ,	<b>scriptūs</b> ,	" <b>scrib-</b>

It will be seen that in the perfect and supine stems **b** of the verb stem becomes a surd (**p**) before the surds **s**, **t**. This is called *assimilation*.

<b>dīcō</b> , <i>I say, I tell</i> ,	<b>dīxī</b> ,	<b>dīctūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>dīc-</b>
<b>cingō</b> , <i>I gird</i> ,	<b>cinxī</b> ,	<b>cinctūs</b> ,	" <b>cing-</b>

In the perfect stem of both these verbs, as in nouns with a palatal stem, **x** is written instead of **cs**, **gs** (5, II.).

In the supine stem **cinct-**, **g** of the verb stem becomes a surd (**c**) before the surd **t**.

<b>dūcō</b> , <i>I lead</i> ,	<b>dūxī</b> ,	<b>ductūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>dūc-</b>
<b>rēgō</b> , <i>I rule</i> ,	<b>rexī</b> ,	<b>rectūs</b> ,	" <b>rēg-</b>
<b>trāhō</b> , <i>I draw</i> ,	<b>traxī</b> ,	<b>tractūs</b> ,	" <b>trāh-</b>

**h** is a palatal, and is so treated in forming the perfect and supine stems.

<b>vĕhō</b> , <i>I carry, I bring</i> ,	<b>vexī</b> ,	<b>vectūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>vĕh-</b>
<b>sculpō</b> , <i>I carve</i> (in stone),	<b>sculpsī</b> ,	<b>sculptūs</b> ,	" <b>sculp-</b>
<b>scalpō</b> , <i>I scrape</i> ,	<b>scalpsī</b> ,	<b>scalptūs</b> ,	" <b>scalp-</b>
<b>tĕgō</b> , <i>I cover</i> ,	<b>texī</b> ,	<b>tectūs</b> ,	" <b>tĕg-</b>
<b>tingō</b> , <i>I dye</i> ,	<b>tinxi</b> ,	<b>tinctūs</b> ,	" <b>ting-</b>

## 33.

THE VERB **Sūm**, *I am*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD, PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.*

1st person	<b>fuī</b> , <i>I have been or I was</i>
2d "	<b>fuistī</b> , <i>thou hast been or thou wast</i>
3d "	<b>fuīt</b> , <i>he has been or he was</i>

*Plur.*

1st person	<b>fuīmus</b> , <i>we have been or we were</i>
2d "	<b>fuistis</b> , <i>you have been or you were</i>
3d "	<b>fuērūt</b> , <i>they have been or they were</i>

## EXERCISES.

1. Cingēbām, cinxērām, trāhām, rexērō. 2. Milītēs cinxērām. 3. Trābēs pontiūm tĕgēbām. 4. Milītēs ēt princīpēs dūcām. 5. Urbēm ēt ciuitātēm rexērō. 6. Milēs laudēm virtūtis hābēt. 7. Milītēs laudē duxērām. 8. Grēgēm jūdicūm rexī. 9. Dē rēgībūs sēd nōn dē lēgībūs scribēbām. 10. Trābēs in urbēs vexērām.

1. I was covering the summits of the mountains. 2. I shall rule in the cities. 3. I write about the cities of the kings. 4. I have led the soldiers out of the cities. 5. We were kings and judges, and we had ruled the cities.

## REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

Many English words contain Latin verb stems. *Carp* means to nibble away reputation, showing the stem **carp-**. The stem **nupt-** is found in *nuptial*. **Scrib-** gives us *scribe*, which means a writer, and **script-** yields *script* and *scripture*, each meaning something *written*. From **dict-** we have *diction* and *dictionary*. A *duct* is a means of *leading* or *drawing* off a liquid, from **duct-**. Other derivatives may easily be found.

It will be noticed that the few derivatives above noted come from the verb stem (which in these verbs is the same as the present stem) or from the supine stem. There are no English words formed from Latin perfect stems.



## STUDY VIII.—SYNOPSIS OF VERBS (Continued).

## Fuëräm.

**34.** Perfect stems are formed from verb stems in several ways. But English derivatives from Latin verbs come from the other stems—none from the perfect. For that reason, we shall merely mention the various perfect stems, as we have occasion to use verbs, without discussing their formation.

The supine stem is formed, as was seen in the last study, by adding **t** to the verb stem.

If the verb stem ends in a lingual (**t**, **d**), two linguals will thus be brought together. In that case, the Romans used to change one or both of the letters so as to make the pronunciation more easy or agreeable. Thus, *cādō*, *I fall* (verb stem *cād-*), has its

perfect participle **cāsūs** (supine stem **cās-**); **ēdō**, *I eat* (verb stem **ēd-**), **ēsūs** (supine stem **ēs-**); **mittō**, *I send* (verb stem **mitt-**), **missūs** (supine stem **miss-**). In all these, the supine stem seems to be formed with **s** instead of **t**.

This is what is called *assimilation*. The second lingual changes to **s** (a sound easily made when the organs of speech are in the position to sound **d** or **t**). The first lingual then either is dropped, or itself becomes **s**.

Thus lingual stems all have the supine stem in **s**.

## 35.

## LIST OF WORDS.

<b>cēdō</b> , <i>I yield</i> ,	<b>cessī</b> ,	<b>cessūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>cēd-</b>
<b>claudō</b> , <i>I close</i> ,	<b>clausī</b> ,	<b>clausūs</b> ,	“ <b>claud-</b>
<b>dīvidō</b> , <i>I divide</i> ,	<b>dīvīsi</b> ,	<b>dīvīsūs</b> ,	“ <b>dīvid-</b>
<b>ēvādō</b> , <i>I evade</i> ,	<b>ēvāsī</b> ,	<b>ēvāsūs</b> ,	“ <b>ēvād-</b>
<b>flectō</b> , <i>I bend</i> ,	<b>flexī</b> ,	<b>flexūs</b> ,	“ <b>flect-</b>

In the stem **flex-**, notice that the full form would be **flect-t-**. The second **t** becomes **s**, before which the other **t** drops. **x** is then written instead of **cs**.

<b>lūdō</b> , <i>I play</i> ,	<b>lūsī</b> ,	<b>lūsūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>lūd-</b>
<b>mittō</b> , <i>I send</i> ,	<b>misī</b> ,	<b>missūs</b> ,	“ <b>mitt-</b>

In the stem **miss-**, the full form would be **mitt-t-**. The last **t** becomes **s**, the preceding **t** drops, and the remaining **t** is assimilated to **s**.

<b>plectō</b> , <i>I plait</i> ,	<b>plexī</b> ,	<b>plexūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>plect-</b>
<b>plaudō</b> , <i>I applaud</i> ,	<b>plausī</b> ,	<b>plausūs</b> ,	“ <b>plaud-</b>
<b>rādō</b> , <i>I shave</i> ,	<b>rāsī</b> ,	<b>rāsūs</b> ,	“ <b>rād-</b>
<b>rōdō</b> , <i>I gnaw</i> ,	<b>rōsī</b> ,	<b>rōsūs</b> ,	“ <b>rōd-</b>
<b>trūdō</b> , <i>I thrust</i> ,	<b>trūsī</b> ,	<b>trūsūs</b> ,	“ <b>trūd-</b>

36. THE VERB **Sūm**, *I am*.

INDICATIVE MOOD, PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.**Plur.***fuērām**, *I had been***fuērāmūs**, *we had been***fuērās**, *thou hadst been***fuērātīs**, *you had been***fuērāt**, *he had been***fuērant**, *they had been***sūb**, *under* (with an accusative or an ablative).

## EXERCISES.

1. **Ād rēgēm mīsī**. 2. **Jūdiōibūs ēt rēgībūs cēdēbām**.  
 3. **Grēgēm dīvisērō**. 4. **Dūcēs ēt rēgēs mīsērām**. 5. **Vō-  
cēm jūdiōūm plaudām**. 6. **Custōdēs īn urbēm trūdēbām**.  
 7. **Puēr hērēs rēgis fuērāt**. 8. **Rex dux civitātis fuit**.  
 9. **Trābēs pontis īn urbē ērunt**. 10. **Rōsērām, trūsērō,  
mittām, lūdēbām, rādām, plēctēbām**.

1. I had bent under the bridge. 2. I was evading  
 the crowd. 3. The guard had been a leader. 4. The  
 boy has teeth. 5. The fountains were under the bridge.

## REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

*Ceding* territory is *yielding* it. The Latin stem is **cēd-**; and *cession* is obviously from the supine stem **cess-**. *Recede* and *recession*, *accede* and *accession*, have the same stem.

In like manner we have *divide* and *division* from **divīd-** and **divīs-** *evade* and *evasion* from **evād-** and **evās-**.

The stem **flect-** occurs in *deflect*, which means to *bend* aside. **Flex-** is found in *flexible*, which means *easily bent*.

*Delude* and *delusion* contain the stems *lūd-* and *lūs-*.

The stem *mitt-* we find in *remit*, *demit*, *emit*. A *mission*, from the stem *miss-*, is evidently something *sent*; and so is a *missive*.

*Applaud*, *erase*, *erode*, *intrude*, have meanings easily seen from their stems.

## STUDY IX.—NOUNS. LIQUID AND S STEMS.

### Fuērō.

37. Noun stems ending in a liquid (l, n, r, there are no stems in m) are declined like mute stems, by attaching the endings of the table in 19, excepting only that in the nominative singular no ending is used.

*sōl*, m., *sun*; stem *sōl-*.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<i>sōl</i> , <i>sun</i> }	<i>sōlēš</i> , <i>suns</i>
Ac.	<i>sōlēš</i> , " }	
G.	<i>sōlīs</i> , <i>of the sun</i>	<i>sōlūš</i> , <i>of suns</i>
D.	<i>sōlī</i> , <i>to the sun</i> }	<i>sōlībūs</i> , <i>to or with suns</i>
Ab.	<i>sōlē</i> , <i>with the sun</i> }	

*leō*, m., *lion*; stem *leōn-*.

[n final after o is dropped.]

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<i>leō</i> , <i>lion</i> }	<i>leōnēš</i> , <i>lions</i>
Ac.	<i>leōnēm</i> , " }	
G.	<i>leōnīs</i> , <i>of a lion</i>	<i>leōnūš</i> , <i>of lions</i>
D.	<i>leōnī</i> , <i>to a lion</i> }	<i>leōnībūs</i> , <i>to or with lions</i>
Ab.	<i>leōnē</i> , <i>with a lion</i> }	

**pastōr**, m., *shepherd*; stem **pastōr-**.

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

N. <b>pastōr</b> , <i>shepherd</i>	}	<b>pastōrēs</b> , <i>shepherds</i>
Ac. <b>pastōrēm</b> , "		
G. <b>pastōris</b> , <i>of a shepherd</i>		<b>pastōrūm</b> , <i>of shepherds</i>
D. <b>pastōrī</b> , <i>to a shepherd</i>	}	<b>pastōribūs</b> , <i>to or with shepherds</i>
Ab. <b>pastōrē</b> , <i>with a shepherd</i>		

**pātr**, m., *father*; stem **pātr-**.

Stems in **-tr-** insert **e** in the nominative, as otherwise the syllable could not be pronounced.

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

N. <b>pāter</b> , <i>a father</i>	}	<b>pātrēs</b> , <i>fathers</i>
Ac. <b>pātrēm</b> , "		
G. <b>pātris</b> , <i>of a father</i>		<b>pātrūm</b> , <i>of fathers</i>
D. <b>pātrī</b> , <i>to a father</i>	}	<b>pātribūs</b> , <i>to or with fathers</i>
Ab. <b>pātrē</b> , <i>with a father</i>		

**virgō**, f., *maiden*; stem **virgīn-**.

When a stem vowel is **i**, it usually becomes **ē** in the nominative singular (21). But stems ending in **dīn** or **gīn** change the **i** to **o** in the nominative, **n** being then dropped as in **leō**.

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

N. <b>virgō</b> , <i>maiden</i>	}	<b>virgīnēs</b> , <i>maidens</i>
Ac. <b>virgīnēm</b> , "		
G. <b>virgīnis</b> , <i>of a maiden</i>		<b>virgīnūm</b> , <i>of maidens</i>
D. <b>virgīnī</b> , <i>to a maiden</i>	}	<b>virgīnībūs</b> , <i>to or with maidens</i>
Ab. <b>virgīnē</b> , <i>with a maiden</i>		

Stems ending in *s* take the same endings as liquid stems. In the inflection, *s* between two vowels becomes *r*.

*mōs*, *m.*, *custom*; stem *mōs*-. .

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>mōs</i> , <i>custom</i>	}	<i>mōrēs</i> , <i>customs</i>
Ac. <i>mōrēm</i> , "		
G. <i>mōrīs</i> , <i>of custom</i>		<i>mōrūm</i> , <i>of customs</i>
D. <i>mōrī</i> , <i>to custom</i>	}	<i>mōribūs</i> , <i>to or with customs</i>
Ab. <i>mōrē</i> , <i>with custom</i>		

### 38. LIST OF WORDS.

<i>sōl</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>sun</i> ,	stem <i>sōl</i> -
<i>consūl</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>a consul</i> ,	" <i>consūl</i> -
<i>leō</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>lion</i> ,	" <i>leōn</i> -
<i>hōmō</i> , <i>m. f.</i> , <i>man (= human being)</i> ,	" <i>hōmīn</i> -

The same changes as in stems in *đīn* and *gīn*.

<i>virgō</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>maiden</i> ,	stem <i>virgīn</i> -
<i>margō</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>brink</i> ,	" <i>margīn</i> -
<i>īmāgō</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>likeness</i> ,	" <i>īmāgīn</i> -
<i>sermō</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>discourse</i> ,	" <i>sermōn</i> -
<i>rēgiō</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>region</i> ,	" <i>rēgiōn</i> -
<i>lēgiō</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>legion</i> ,	" <i>lēgiōn</i> -
<i>ōrātiō</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>oration</i> ,	" <i>ōrātiōn</i> -
<i>ōpīniō</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>opinion</i> ,	" <i>ōpīniōn</i> -
<i>pāter</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>father</i> ,	" <i>pātr</i> -
<i>frāter</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>brother</i> ,	" <i>frātr</i> -
<i>māter</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>mother</i> ,	" <i>mātr</i> -
<i>pastōr</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>shepherd</i> ,	" <i>pastōr</i> -
<i>viātōr</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>traveller</i> ,	" <i>viātōr</i> -
<i>ōrātōr</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>a speaker</i> ,	" <i>ōrātōr</i> -
<i>glādiātōr</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>a swordsman</i> ,	" <i>glādiātōr</i> -
<i>crēditōr</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>a lender</i> ,	" <i>crēditōr</i> -
<i>dēbītōr</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>a debtor</i> ,	" <i>dēbītōr</i> -





tīmōr, m., <i>fear</i> ,	stem tīmōr-
arbōr, f., <i>a tree</i> ,	" arbōr-
hōnōr, m., <i>honor</i> ,	" hōnōr-
cartilāgō, f., <i>gristle</i> ,	" cartilāgīn-
cardō, m., <i>hinge</i> ,	" cardīn-
ordō, m., <i>a row</i> ,	" ordin-
altitūdō, f., <i>height</i> ,	" altitūdīn-
magnitūdō, f., <i>greatness</i> ,	" magnitūdīn-
multitūdō, f., <i>great number</i> ,	" multitūdīn-
mōs, m., <i>custom</i> ,	" mōs-
mūs, m., <i>mouse</i> ,	" mūs- (G. Plur. mūrīum)

### THE VERB Sūm, *I am*.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD, FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

##### *Sing.*

1st person	fuērō, <i>I shall have been</i>
2d "	fuēris, <i>thou wilt have been</i>
3d "	fuērit, <i>he will have been</i>

##### *Plur.*

1st person	fuērīmūs, <i>we shall have been</i>
2d "	fuērītis, <i>you will have been</i>
3d "	fuērīnt, <i>they will have been</i>

#### EXERCISES.

1. Vox leōnis est (*it is*). 2. Pātrēs urbīs ērant dūcēs grēgis. 3. Leōnēs nōn hōmīnēs sunt. 4. Trābēs vēhēbām ēt pontēs tēgēbām. 5. Virgīnēs ēt milītēs ōrātōrēs nōn ērant. 6. Altītūdō montiūm; pastōr grēgis; pāter frātrūm. 7. Virgō cūm milītē it. 8. Puēr laudēm īmāgīnī pātris dāt. 9. Glādiātōrī ēt milītī cēdēbām. 10. Vōcēm ōrātōrīs plan-dēbām.

1. I shall applaud the maidens. 2. The sun is the light of the mountains. 3. I shall gnaw the roots with teeth. 4. The teeth of the lion are not the teeth of a human being. 5. The swordsman is a leader of men.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

**Sōl-** is found in *solar*, **consŭl-** in *consular*, and **leōn-** in *leonine*. **Virgĭn-** is our word *virgin*, **margĭn-** is *margin*, **Imāgĭn-** we make into the verb *imagine*. *Paternal*, *maternal*, *fraternal* are from the Latin nominatives, while the stems of the same words are found in *par-ricide* (= *patricide*), *matricide*, and *fratricide*, — **cide** meaning *murder*. A *pastor* is a shepherd. An *orator*, a *gladiator*, a *creditor*, we understand at once, and our word *debtor* is clearly the Latin **dēbitōr**. *Cartilaginous* means composed of *gristle*.

*Cardinal* is the name of a red color and of an order of rank in the Roman Catholic priesthood. Originally it means something *important*, that on which other things *turn* (from **cardĭn-**, *hinge*). Hence it came to be applied to a high rank in the priesthood, and then naturally to the color of the distinctive badge of that rank (the red hat). So it is that the name which ladies commonly apply to ribbons is derived from a Latin stem which means *hinge*.

*Altitude*, *magnitude*, and *multitude* are simply the Latin nominatives made into English words.

## STUDY X.—NOUNS. NEUTER STEMS.

39. The noun stems thus far studied are masculine or feminine. Neuters are somewhat different in their inflection.

It has been seen that masculine and feminine liquid stems take no ending in the nominative singular. A neuter stem ending in a consonant we shall find takes no case ending either in the nominative or in the accusative singular. And in those cases in the plural, neuters take the ending *ă* (or *îă*) instead of *ēs*.

In the rest of the cases neuter stems take the same endings as masculine and feminine stems.

Thus the table of endings for neuter consonant stems is as follows :

## SECOND TABLE OF ENDINGS.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	—	ă (or îă)
Ac.	—	
G.	is	îm (or îm)
D.	i	ibŭs
Ab.	ē	

40. *poēmă*, m., *poem*; stem *poēmăt-*.

In the inflection, final *t* preceded by *a* is dropped.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<i>poēmă</i> , <i>poem</i>	<i>poēmătă</i> , <i>poems</i>
Ac.	" "	
G.	<i>poēmătis</i> , <i>of a poem</i>	<i>poēmătŭm</i> , <i>of poems</i>
D.	<i>poēmătī</i> , <i>to a poem</i>	<i>poēmătibŭs</i> , <i>to or with poems</i>
Ab.	<i>poēmătē</i> , <i>with a poem</i>	

**cōr**, n., *heart*; stem **cord-**.

In the inflection, final **d** after a consonant is dropped.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. <b>cōr</b> , <i>heart</i>	}	<b>cordă</b> , <i>hearts</i>
Ac. " "		
G. <b>cordīs</b> , <i>of a heart</i>	}	— (In this word the G. Plur. is lacking)
D. <b>cordī</b> , <i>to a heart</i>		
Ab. <b>cordē</b> , <i>with a heart</i>		
		<b>cordībūs</b> , <i>to or with hearts</i>

**nōmēn**, n., *name*; stem **nōmīn-**.

For the change of **ī** to **ē** in the nominative singular, see 21.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. <b>nōmēn</b> , <i>name</i>	}	<b>nōmīnă</b> , <i>names</i>
Ac. " "		
G. <b>nōmīnīs</b> , <i>of a name</i>	}	<b>nōmīnūm</b> , <i>of names</i>
D. <b>nōmīnī</b> , <i>to a name</i>		
Ab. <b>nōmīnē</b> , <i>with a name</i>		
		<b>nōmīnībūs</b> , <i>to or with names</i>

**jūs**, n., *right*; stem **jūs-**.

**s** of the stem is changed to **r** between two vowels.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. <b>jūs</b> , <i>right</i>	}	<b>jūră</b> , <i>rights</i>
Ac. " "		
G. <b>jūrīs</b> , <i>of right</i>	}	<b>jūrūm</b> , <i>of rights</i>
D. <b>jūrī</b> , <i>to right</i>		
Ab. <b>jūrē</b> , <i>with right</i>		
		<b>jūrībūs</b> , <i>to or with rights</i>

#### 41. LIST OF WORDS.

**căpūt**, n., *head*, stem **căpīt-**

In this word the stem vowel **ī** becomes **ū** instead of **ē** in the nominative singular.

<b>carmĕn</b> , n., <i>song</i> ,	stem <b>carmĭn-</b>
<b>ĕpŭs</b> , n., <i>work</i> ,	" <b>ĕpĕr-</b>

The stem vowel **ĕ** becomes **ĭ** in the nominative singular, as in **căpŭt**.

<b>corpŭs</b> , n., <i>body</i> ,	stem <b>corpĕr-</b>
-----------------------------------	---------------------

The stem vowel **ĕ** becomes **ĭ** in the nominative singular, as in **căpŭt**.

<b>cădăvĕr</b> , n., <i>corpse</i> ,	stem <b>cădăvĕr-</b>
<b>ĭtĕr</b> , n., <i>journey</i> ,	stems { <b>ĭtĕr-</b> (only in the N. and Ac. Sing.), <b>ĭtĭnĕr-</b>
<b>tempŭs</b> , n., <i>time</i> ,	stem <b>tempĕr-</b>
<b>gĕnŭs</b> , n., <i>kind</i> ,	" <b>gĕnĕs-</b>
<b>lătŭs</b> , n., <i>side</i> ,	" <b>lătĕs-</b>
<b>pondŭs</b> , n., <i>weight</i> ,	" <b>pondĕs-</b>
<b>ōs</b> , n., <i>bone</i> ,	" <b>oss-</b>

In the N. Sing. one **s** is dropped.

<b>rŭs</b> , n., <i>country</i> ,	stem <b>rŭs-</b>
<b>dĕ</b> , <i>about, from</i> (with an ablative).	

### EXERCISES.

1. Hōmīnēs jŭră hăbent. 2. Carmīnă virgīnŭm plaudō.  
3. Cădăvĕră glădiătōrŭm ĩn (on) pontĕ sunt. 4. Pondŭs tră-  
bŭm ; căpĭtă milĭtŭm ; tempĕrĭbŭs, lătĕrĭbŭs, ossă. 5. ĭtĭnĕră  
rĕgŭm dicĕbăm. 6. Ossă rădăm. 7. Rŭs ăt urbĕm rexĭ.  
8. Gĕnĕră urbiŭm multă (*many*) sunt. 9. Mĭlĕs multă  
ĕpĕră hăbĕt. 10. Poĕmătă ĕpĕră hōmĭnŭm sunt.

1. The bridge has many (**multă**) sides. 2. Many  
bones are in the body. 3. Songs are works of men.  
4. I was writing about the country and the mountains.  
5. Bones have weight.

## REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

*Poem* and *corpse* are the nominatives **poēmă** and **corpūs** made directly into English. **Căpît-** we find in *capital*, the head city of a country. **Ōpěr-** is in *operate*; **corpōr-** in *corporeal*, which means *bodily*; **tempōr-** in *temporary*, i.e. *for a time*; **cădăvēr-** in *cadaverous*, i.e. *pale like a corpse* (and medical students call a human body provided for dissection a *cadaver*); **lătēr-** in *lateral*; **ponděr-** in *ponderous*; **oss-** in *ossified*, that is, *made into bone*. The form **rūs** we find in *rustic*, and the form **rūr-** in *rural*.



## STUDY XI. — ADJECTIVES. CONSONANT STEMS.

**42.** The Romans inflected adjectives as they did nouns. As a Latin adjective must be in the same number, case, and gender as the noun to which it belongs, the inflection of every adjective has to provide for both the numbers, all the cases, and all the genders.

If the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant, the forms for the masculine and feminine are the same, as there is no difference in the inflection of masculine and feminine consonant stems. And neuter consonant stems, as was seen in the last study, differ in inflection from those of other genders only in the nominative and accusative cases.

**fēlix**, *happy*; stem **fēlic-**.

Consonant adjective stems, unlike nouns, take the ending **s** in the nominative singular of *all genders*. As the accusative of a neuter is always like the nominative, that also has the ending **s**, instead of **ēm**.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N.	<b>fēlix</b>	}	<b>fēlix</b>	<b>fēlicēs</b>	<b>fēlicīā</b>
Ac.	<b>fēlicēm</b>				
G.	<b>fēlicīs</b>			<b>fēlicīūm</b>	
D.	<b>fēlicī</b>	}		<b>fēlicībūs</b>	
Ab.	<b>fēlicē(I)</b>				

**carpens**, *gnawing*; stem **carpent-**.

Present participles in Latin are declined like adjectives with stems in **nt-**.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N.	<b>carpens</b>	}	<b>carpens</b>	<b>carpentēs</b>	<b>carpentīā</b>
Ac.	<b>carpentēm</b>				
G.	<b>carpentīs</b>			<b>carpentīūm</b>	
D.	<b>carpentī</b>	}		<b>carpentībūs</b>	
Ab.	<b>carpentē</b>				

**fēliciōr**, *happier*; stem **fēliciōr-**.

In comparing adjectives, the stem of the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by adding to the latter **ior-**.

The neuter nominative singular has **iūs**, as if from a stem in **s**, with a vowel change (38).

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N.	<b>fēliciōr</b>	}	<b>fēliciūs</b>	<b>fēliciōrēs</b>	<b>fēliciōrā</b>
Ac.	<b>fēliciōrēm</b>				
G.	<b>fēliciōrīs</b>			<b>fēliciōrūm</b>	
D.	<b>fēliciōrī</b>	}		<b>fēliciōrībūs</b>	
Ab.	<b>fēliciōrē</b>				

It will be noticed that the plural endings *iă* and *iŭm* are used by participles and by adjectives in the positive degree, while adjectives in the comparative use *ă* and *ŭm*.

## 43.

## LIST OF WORDS.

<b>audax</b> , bold,	stem <b>audăc-</b> ,	Eng. deriv.	<b>audacious</b>
<b>căpax</b> , capacious,	" <b>căpăc-</b> ,	"	<b>capacious</b>
<b>fallax</b> , deceptive,	" <b>fallăc-</b> ,	"	<b>fallacious</b>
<b>lŏquax</b> , talkative,	" <b>lŏquăc-</b> ,	"	<b>loquacious</b>
<b>mendax</b> , lying,	" <b>mendăc-</b> ,	"	<b>mendacious</b>
<b>pugnax</b> , quarrelsome,	" <b>pugnăc-</b> ,	"	<b>pugnacious</b>
<b>răpax</b> , rapacious,	" <b>răpăc-</b> ,	"	<b>rapacious</b>
<b>săgax</b> , sagacious,	" <b>săgăc-</b> ,	"	<b>sagacious</b>
<b>tēnax</b> , tenacious,	" <b>tēnăc-</b> ,	"	<b>tenacious</b>
<b>vīvax</b> , full of life, lively,	" <b>vīvăc-</b> ,	"	<b>vivacious</b>
<b>vŏrax</b> , voracious,	" <b>vŏrăc-</b> ,	"	<b>voracious</b>
<b>fērox</b> , fierce,	" <b>fērŏc-</b> ,	"	<b>ferocious</b>
<b>fēlix</b> , fortunate, happy,	" <b>fēlīc-</b> ,	"	<b>felicitous</b>
<b>absens</b> , absent,	" <b>absent-</b> ,	"	<b>absent</b>
<b>ăbundans</b> , abundant,	" <b>ăbundant-</b> ,	"	<b>abundant</b>
<b>arrŏgans</b> , arrogant,	" <b>arrŏgant-</b> ,	"	<b>arrogant</b>
<b>dīlīgens</b> , diligent,	" <b>dīlīgēnt-</b> ,	"	<b>diligent</b>
<b>ēlēgans</b> , elegant,	" <b>ēlēgant-</b> ,	"	<b>elegant</b>
<b>ēlŏquens</b> , eloquent,	" <b>ēlŏquent-</b> ,	"	<b>eloquent</b>
<b>ēvidens</b> , evident,	" <b>ēvidēnt-</b> ,	"	<b>evident</b>
<b>frēquens</b> , crowded,	" <b>frēquent-</b> ,	"	<b>frequent</b>
<b>impŭdens</b> , shameless,	" <b>impŭdēnt-</b> ,	"	<b>impudent</b>
<b>prŭdens</b> , foreseeing,	" <b>prŭdēnt-</b> ,	"	<b>prudent</b>
<b>rēcens</b> , fresh,	" <b>rēcēnt-</b> ,	"	<b>recent</b>
<b>splendens</b> , splendid,	" <b>splendēnt-</b>		
<b>aŭdăciŏr</b> , bolder,	" <b>aŭdăciŏr-</b>		
<b>lŏquăciŏr</b> , more talkative,	" <b>lŏquăciŏr-</b>		
<b>ēlēgantiŏr</b> , more elegant,	" <b>ēlēgantiŏr-</b>		
	<b>quăm</b> , than		



44. An adjective must be in the same gender, number, and case as the noun or pronoun to which it relates.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Puēr diligens est. 2. Dux cūm glādiātōribūs pugnācibūs it. 3. Milītēs sunt audācēs. 4. Dē virgīnībūs impudentībūs nōn scribām. 5. Dē ōpēribūs dūcīs sāgācīs dīcēbām. 6. Carmīnā ēt poēmātā sunt vivāciā. 7. Ōpērā ōrātōrūm ēlōquentiūm plaudō. 8. Rex milītēs fērōcēs ēt dūcēs sāgācēs hābēt. 9. Itinērā hōmīnīs nōn sunt fēliciā. 10. Leōnēs rāpāciōrēs rūrē quām in urbē sunt.

1. The poem is not elegant. 2. Of the sagacious leaders. 3. To the prudent soldiers. 4. The weight of the bridge was evident. 5. I have written about fresh songs.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

These consonant stem adjectives nearly all have a stem ending in *c* or *nt*. The former are found, almost without exception, in English adjectives in *ous*; as, *audacious*, *fallacious*, and the like. The *nt* stems are used without change as English words; e.g. *elegant*, *eloquent*. We shall see later that these *nt* stems are derived usually from Latin verbs. For instance, *ēlōquent-* is from a verb which means *to speak*.

## STUDY XII. — INFLECTION OF VERBS. CON- SONANT STEMS.

45. The synopsis of the indicative mood in the first person singular has been given in a preceding study (VII. 31). And it has been seen that from the verb stem are formed three other stems,—the present, perfect, and supine.

The present stem often and the perfect stem occasionally are the same as the verb stem.

A verb is inflected by attaching to the proper stem the endings which indicate mood, tense, person, and number.

1. The present, imperfect, and future tenses, in both voices, attach the endings to the present stem.

2. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, in the active voice, attach the endings to the perfect stem.

3. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, in the passive voice, are compound. They use the past participle (which has the supine stem), and, as an auxiliary, the present, imperfect, and future, respectively, of the verb *sūm*.

### 46. a. TABLE OF PERSONAL ENDINGS.

The endings which indicate person and number are as follows :

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	(m)	mūs	r	mūr
2d    "	s	tīs	rīs	mīnī
3d    "	t	nt	tūr	ntūr

In the first person singular the ending *m* is regularly omitted after *o*, and in the perfect indicative active.

The personal endings are connected to the stem by letters or syllables, which indicate mood and tense.

### b. TABLE OF CONNECTING VOWELS.

#### *Present Indicative.*

The connecting vowels of the present indicative are as follows :

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	ō	ī	ō	ī
2d    "	ī	ī	ō	ī
3d    "	ī	ū	ī	ū

47. By joining the stem, connecting vowel, and personal ending, in that order, we have the inflection of *carpō* (stem *carp-*): *carp-ō*, *carp-ī-s*, *carp-ī-t*, etc.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

[For the translation, see Study VII.]

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carpō</b>	<b>carpīmūs</b>	<b>carpōr</b>	<b>carpīmūr</b>
2d    "	<b>carpīs</b>	<b>carpītīs</b>	<b>carpēris</b>	<b>carpīmīni</b>
3d    "	<b>carpīt</b>	<b>carpunt</b>	<b>carpītūr</b>	<b>carpuntūr</b>

The imperfect indicative is shown by the syllable *ba*, prefixed to the personal endings; and the tense ending thus formed, *bām*, *bās*, etc., is joined to the stem by the connecting vowel *ē*.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	carpēbām	carpēbāmūs	carpēbār	carpēbāmūr
2d    "	carpēbās	carpēbātīs	carpēbārīs	carpēbāmīnī
3d    "	carpēbāt	carpēbant	carpēbātūr	carpēbantūr

The future indicative is shown by joining the stem and personal endings by the connecting vowel *a* in the first person singular, and *e* in the remaining forms.

## FUTURE TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	carpām	carpēmūs	carpār	carpēmūr
2d    "	carpēs	carpētīs	carpērīs	carpēmīnī
3d    "	carpēt	carpent	carpētūr	carpentūr

## EXERCISES.

1. Sōl montēs tingēbāt. 2. Puēr lāpidēs vēhēt. 3. Ōrātōr laudēs rēgīs dīcēbāt. 4. Dentēs hērēdīs trāhēbantūr. 5. Virgō leonēs rēgīt. 6. Milītēs urbēm cingunt. 7. Pastōrēs grēgēs dūcent. 8. Montēs tingentūr. 9. Custōdēs urbīs dūcēbantūr. 10. Virgīnēs sē nūbunt.

1. The brothers will be led to (ād) the mother.  
 2. The likeness of the consul will be carved (in stone).  
 3. The leader rules the state. 4. Legions of soldiers were led to the city. 5. We were drawn to the mountain.

### STUDY XIII. — INFLECTION OF VERBS. CON- SONANT STEMS (Continued).

48. The endings of the perfect indicative active are those seen in the inflection of **fui** (Study VII.).

They are as follows :

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>ī</b>	<b>imūs</b>
2d    "	<b>istī</b>	<b>istīs</b>
3d    "	<b>it</b>	<b>ērunt</b>

The perfect indicative passive uses the perfect participle, with the present indicative of **sūm** (Study IV.) as an auxiliary.

#### PERFECT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carpsī</b>	<b>carpsīmūs</b>	<b>carptūs sūm</b>	<b>carptī sūmūs</b>
2d “	<b>carpsistī</b>	<b>carpsistīs</b>	<b>carptūs ēs</b>	<b>carptī estīs</b>
3d “	<b>carpsit</b>	<b>carpsērunt</b>	<b>carptūs est</b>	<b>carptī sunt</b>

The participle **carptī** in the plural of the verb has the plural form of the adjective, to agree with the plural subject. All participles are inflected like adjectives, and agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

49. The endings of the pluperfect indicative active are merely the imperfect, **ērām**, of the verb **sūm** (Study V.); and the same tense of **sūm** is the auxiliary with the perfect participle to form the pluperfect indicative passive.

## . PLUPERFECT TENSE.

## Active Voice.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carpsērām</b>	<b>carpsērāmūs</b>
2d "	<b>carpsērās</b>	<b>carpsērātīs</b>
3d "	<b>carpsērāt</b>	<b>carpsērant</b>

## Passive Voice.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carptūs ērām</b>	<b>carptī ērāmūs</b>
2d "	<b>carptūs ērās</b>	<b>carptī ērātīs</b>
3d "	<b>carptūs ērāt</b>	<b>carptī ērant</b>

50. The endings of the future perfect indicative active are merely the future, **ērō**, of the verb **sūm** (Study VI.).

In the third person plural the ending is **ērint**, instead of **ērunt**.

The same tense of **sūm** is the auxiliary with the perfect participle to form the future perfect indicative passive.

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carpsērō</b>	<b>carpsērīmūs</b>	<b>carptūs ērō</b>	<b>carptī ērīmūs</b>
2d "	<b>carpsērīs</b>	<b>carpsērītīs</b>	<b>carptūs ēris</b>	<b>carptī ērītīs</b>
3d "	<b>carpsērīt</b>	<b>carpsērint</b>	<b>carptūs ērīt</b>	<b>carptī ērunt</b>

**ā, āb, by** (with an ablative)

**trans, across** (with an accusative)

## EXERCISES.

1. Dux cruci cessērāt. 2. Rex lēgēs ēvāsērīt. 3. Vox pontificis iudicēm plausīt. 4. Silex nōn flexūs ērāt. 5. Mi-

litēs ād āpicēm montīs missī ērunt. 6. Oīr milītīs audācis ād tīmōrēm trāhēbātūr. 7. Rēgēs arrōgantēs ā milītībūs nōn plausī ērunt. 8. Puēr ā leōnē vōrācē nōn tractūs ērāt. 9. Mūs pēdēm milītīs carpsit. 10. Vox consulūm sāgāciūm hōmīnēs lōquācēs rexērāt.

1. The fortunate maidens had been carried across the bridge. 2. The rights of peace were yielded by the consuls. 3. The mountains will have been covered by the soldiers. 4. The lively mouse had gnawed the bridge. 5. The lying orators have been dragged (= drawn) to the city.

#### STUDY XIV.—NOUNS. STEMS IN I. Sim.

51. Masculine and feminine noun stems ending in *i*, like consonant stems, are inflected by attaching the endings of the table in 19.

These endings often begin with *i* or *ē*, which usually disappears after the stem vowel.

*turrīs*, *f.*, tower; stem *turrī-*.

The vowel in the ending disappears, except in the N. Plur.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>turrīs</i> , tower	<i>turrēs</i> , towers
Ac. <i>turrīm</i> , tower	<i>turrīs</i> , towers
G. <i>turrīs</i> , of a tower	<i>turrīūm</i> , of towers
D. <i>turrī</i> , to a tower	<i>turrībūs</i> , to or with towers
Ab. <i>turrī</i> , with a tower	

Sometimes the stem vowel disappears: Ac. Sing. *turrēm*; Ab. Sing. *turrē*; Ac. Plur. *turrēs*.

**nūbēs**, *f., cloud*; stem **nūbĭ-**.

The stem vowel disappears, or (before a consonant) becomes **e**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>nūbēs</b> , <i>cloud</i>	<b>nūbēs</b> , <i>clouds</i>
Ac.	<b>nūbēm</b> , <i>cloud</i>	
G.	<b>nūbĭs</b> , <i>of a cloud</i>	<b>nūbiŭm</b> , <i>of clouds</i>
D.	<b>nūbĭ</b> , <i>to a cloud</i>	<b>nūbĭbŭs</b> , <i>to or with clouds</i>
Ab.	<b>nūbĕ</b> , <i>with a cloud</i>	

Neuter noun stems ending in *ĭ*, like consonant stems, are inflected by attaching the endings of the table in 39.

If no ending is attached, the stem vowel *ĭ* is changed to *e*, or is lost.

**mārĕ**, *n., sea*; stem **mārĭ-**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>mārĕ</b>	<b>mārĭā</b>
Ac.		
G.	<b>mārĭs</b>	<b>mārĭŭm</b>
D.	<b>mārĭ</b>	<b>mārĭbŭs</b>
Ab.		

**ānĭmāl**, *n., animal*; stem **ānĭmālĭ-**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>ānĭmāl</b> , <i>animal</i>	<b>ānĭmālĭā</b> , <i>animals</i>
Ac.		
G.	<b>ānĭmālĭs</b> , <i>of an animal</i>	<b>ānĭmālĭŭm</b> , <i>of animals</i>
D.	<b>ānĭmālĭ</b> , { <i>to or with an</i>	<b>ānĭmālĭbŭs</b> , { <i>to or with</i>
Ab.		
	<i>animal</i>	<i>animals</i>

Many nouns apparently have two stems, one ending in a consonant and the other in *ĭ*. In such nouns the stem in *ĭ* is used in the plural, the consonant stem in the nominative singular, and either or both in the remaining cases of the singular. Notice **urb**s (20), G. Plur. **urbĭŭm**. Also **dens**, **mons**, **pons**, **fons**



(25, note) have G. Plur. in **īūm**. Usually a monosyllabic stem ending in two consonants has a second stem in **i**.

Adjective consonant stems (in the positive degree) regularly have the second stem in **i**. Comparatives. rarely have the second stem.

52. Masculine stems in **rī**, preceded by a mute, usually form the nominative like stems in **r** (37). The **i** is lost, and **ē** is inserted between the mute and **r**, for ease of enunciation.

**imbēr**, m., *storm*; stem **imbrī**-.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>imbēr</b> , <i>storm</i>	<b>imbrēs</b> , <i>storms</i>
Ac.	<b>imbrēm</b> , <i>storm</i>	<b>imbrīs(ēs)</b> , <i>storms</i>
G.	<b>imbrīs</b> , <i>of a storm</i>	<b>imbrīūm</b> , <i>of storms</i>
D.	<b>imbrī</b> , <i>to a storm</i>	<b>imbrībūs</b> , <i>to or with storms</i>
Ab.	<b>imbrī(ē)</b> , <i>with a storm</i>	

53. The subjunctive mood in the Latin verb has the same tenses as the indicative, excepting the future and future perfect.

The meaning of the subjunctive varies. Sometimes it is translated by the English indicative, sometimes like the potential, sometimes like our subjunctive.

### THE VERB **Sūm**, *I am*.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>sīm</b>	<b>sīmūs</b>
2d    "	<b>sīs</b>	<b>sītis</b>
3d    "	<b>sit</b>	<b>sint</b>

**sī audax sīm**, if I *should be* courageous

**ūt audax sīt**, in-order-that he *may be* courageous

## 54.

## LIST OF WORDS.

turrīs, f., <i>tower</i> ,	stem	turrī-
ignīs, m., <i>fire</i> ,	"	ignī-
hostīs, m. f., <i>enemy</i> ,	"	hostī-
nāvīs, f., <i>ship</i> ,	"	nāvi-
āvis, f., <i>bird</i> ,	"	āvi-
cīvis, m. f., <i>citizen</i> ,	"	cīvi-
classīs, f., <i>fleet</i> ,	"	classī-
clāvīs, f., <i>key</i> ,	"	clāvī-
finīs, m. f., <i>end</i> ,	"	finī-
orbīs, m., <i>circle</i> ,	"	orbī-
pestīs, f., <i>pest</i> ,	"	pestī-
postīs, m., <i>post</i> ,	"	postī-
testīs, m., <i>witness</i> ,	"	testī-
aurīs, f., <i>ear</i> ,	"	aurī-
nūbēs, f., <i>cloud</i> ,	"	nūbī-
vallēs, f., <i>valley</i> ,	"	vallī-
sēdēs, f., <i>seat</i> ,	"	sēdī-
ānimāl, n., <i>animal</i> ,	"	ānimālī-
tribūnāl, m., <i>tribunal</i> ,	"	tribūnālī-
căpītāl, n., <i>capital</i> ,	"	căpītālī-
mărē, n., <i>sea</i> ,	"	mări-
conclāvē, m., <i>a (locked) chamber</i> ,	"	conclāvī-

sī, *if*ūt, *in-order-that, that*

## EXERCISES.

1. Turrēs urbiūm elēgantēs sunt. 2. Ānimālīā fērōciā trāhēbantūr. 3. Măriā sunt ābundantiā. 4. Classīs nāviūm nūbībūs tēgēbātūr. 5. Hostēs fēliciōrēs quām cīvēs ērant. 6. Poēmātā elēgantīā ā cīvībūs scriptā (see 48) ērant. 7. Finīs pācis ērāt. 8. Custōdēs vallīs dilīgentiōrēs quām milītēs hostiūm ērant. 9. Īn urbē est, ūt cīvēs audāciōrēs sint. 10. Corpōrā ānimālīūm fērōciūm īn pontē fuērant.

1. The citizens will cover the fleet. 2. Rapacious animals were dragging the flock to (ad) the mountains. 3. The deceptive witness has the ears of the crowd. 4. The bones of fierce animals were in the ships. 5. The clouds had brought storms.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

The stem without its final *ī* is sometimes found as an English word. *Animal* and *tribunal* are examples. *Class* means a number of people united for common purposes. This is evidently a metaphor from the Latin word which means a collection of ships. *Orb* has the same meaning as the Latin stem *orbī-*; *post*, the same as *postī-*. *Test* is a verb which means to find out by *evidence*.

The stem without its final *ī* occurs in some derivative words: e.g. *nāvī-* in *naval*.

The full stem is seen in many derivatives: e.g. *ignite*, *hostile*, *navigate*, *aviary*, *civic*, *testify*, *auricular*. *Civil* is the behavior of a *citizen* (i.e. one who lives in a city), as *rustic* is that of a countryman (*rūs*, Study VII.). *Conclāvē* (stem *conclāvī-*) gives us the word *conclave*. In the Latin stem, the prefix *con* means *together*, and *clāvī-* means a *key*. So a *conclave* means *persons locked up together* for a common purpose. This is just what is meant by the *conclave* of cardinals, who, on the death of a pope, are supposed to be locked up in session until they elect a successor.

NOTE. — A stem without a final stem vowel is called a *nude stem*.

## STUDY XV. — ADJECTIVES. STEMS IN I.

## Essem.

55. Adjectives with stems in **i** are inflected like noun **i** stems.

Usually the masculine and feminine are alike, being inflected like **turris**. The neuter is like **mărě**.

**tristis**, *sad*; stem **tristī-**.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N. <b>tristis</b>	<b>tristē</b>	<b>tristēs</b>	<b>tristiā</b>
Ac. <b>tristēm</b>			
G. <b>tristis</b>		<b>tristiūm</b>	
D. }	<b>tristī</b>	<b>tristībūs</b>	
Ab. }			

In the masculine and feminine the N. Sing. always has **i**, the Ac. Sing. regularly has **ēm**, the Ab. Sing. usually has **ī** (sometimes **ě**), the Ac. Plur. sometimes has **is**.

56. Stems in **ri**, preceded by a mute, form the N. Sing. masculine, like **imbēr** (52). The feminine is like that of **tristis**.

**ācēr**, *sharp*; stem **ācrī-**.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	M.	F.	N.		
N.	ācēr	ācrīs	} ācrě	M. and F.	N.
Ac.	ācrēm			ācrēs	ācriā
G.	ācrīs			ācriūm	
D.	}	ācrī			ācribūs
Ab.					

Many adjectives apparently have two stems, one ending in a consonant and the other in *i*. The *i* stem is used in the plural, the consonant stem in the nominative singular, and either or both in the remaining cases of the singular. See Study XI.

In the ablative singular, adjective stems in *nt-* have *i*, while participle stems in *nt-* have *ē*.

### 57. THE VERB *Sūm*, *I am*.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, IMPERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<i>essēm</i> , <i>I was</i> or <i>I might be</i> , etc.	<i>essēmūs</i>
2d    "	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
3d    "	<i>essēt</i>	<i>essent</i>

*ūt audax essēt*, in-order-that he *might be* bold

*si audax essēm*, if I *were* bold

### 58. LIST OF WORDS.

<i>tristis</i> , <i>sad</i> ,	stem	<i>tristī-</i>
<i>infāmis</i> , <i>infamous</i> ,	"	<i>infāmī-</i>
<i>sublīmīs</i> , <i>sublime</i> ,	"	<i>sublīmī-</i>
<i>lēvis</i> , <i>light</i> ,	"	<i>lēvī-</i>
<i>acclīvīs</i> , <i>sloping up</i> ,	"	<i>acclīvī-</i>
<i>dēclīvīs</i> , <i>sloping down</i> ,	"	<i>dēclīvī-</i>
<i>coelestīs</i> , <i>heavenly</i> ,	"	<i>coelestī-</i>
<i>rūdīs</i> , <i>rough</i> ,	"	<i>rūdī-</i>
<i>inānīs</i> , <i>empty</i> ,	"	<i>inānī-</i>
<i>insignīs</i> , <i>distinguished</i> ,	"	<i>insignī-</i>
<i>insomnīs</i> , <i>sleepless</i> ,	"	<i>insomnī-</i>
<i>omnīs</i> , <i>all</i> ,	"	<i>omnī-</i>
<i>sollemnīs</i> , <i>solemn</i> ,	"	<i>sollemnī-</i>
<i>biennīs</i> , <i>once in two years</i> ,	"	<i>biennī-</i>

āgilis, <i>agile</i> ,	stem āgIII-
dēbilis, <i>weak</i> ,	" dēbIII-
aequālis, <i>equal</i> ,	" aequāII-
Aprīlis, <i>April</i> (month),	" AprīII-
cēlēr, <i>quick, swift</i> ,	" cēlērI-

The forms in the N. Sing. are cēlēr, cēlērē, cēlērīs. It will at once be seen that the ě preceding r belongs to the stem, and is not inserted.

ālācēr, <i>quick, ready</i> ,	stem ālācērI-
ēquestēr, <i>on horseback</i> ,	" ēquestērI-

### EXERCISES.

1. Oīvēs insomnēs fuērant. 2. Āvis ālācērīs ēt leō fērox in (on) montē ērant. 3. Urbs in montē dēclīvī est. 4. Omnēs nāvēs ā hostībūs trāhēbantūr. 5. Nūbēs lēvēs montēs cingēbant. 6. Vallēs imbrībūs ēt nūbībūs tēgentūr. 7. Ānimāliā omniā mārīā rēgunt. 8. Leō āvi cēdit. 9. Puēr dilīgens ērāt ūt inānīs nōn essēt. 10. Sī militēs insomnēs essent, tristēs nōn essent (*would be*).

1. Animals were dragging the weak birds. 2. The fleet of the fierce enemy was on (in) the sea. 3. All the posts were nibbled by the teeth of mice. 4. A soldier on horseback led the crowded citizens. 5. The speakers were more infamous than the gladiators.

### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

Adjective stems are often found in English abstract nouns ending in *-ty*; e.g. *sublimity*, *levity* (lightness), *declivity* (a slope down).

The neuter plural *insignīā* is used as an English word, meaning *things which distinguish* something.

The dative plural *omnībūs* is the name of a vehicle for all, — a carryall.

*Agile, equal, April*, are merely the Latin stems; the *i* being dropped in English.

*Biennial* and *celestial* contain stems which will be recognized at once.



## STUDY XVI — NOUNS. STEMS IN U.

### Fuērīm, Fuissēm.

59. Masculine and feminine noun stems ending in *u* are inflected by attaching the endings of the table in 19.

The stem vowel *u* absorbs *ē* of the ending, and in the G. Sing. absorbs *i*, but is lost in the D. Ab. Plur.

In a few nouns *i* is absorbed or disappears in other cases.

*currūs*, m., *chariot*; stem *currū-*.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>currūs</i> , <i>chariot</i>	}	<i>currūs</i> , <i>chariots</i>
Ac. <i>currūm</i> , <i>chariot</i>		
G. <i>currūs</i> , <i>of a chariot</i>	}	<i>curruūm</i> , <i>of chariots</i>
D. <i>curruī</i> , <i>to a chariot</i>		<i>currībūs</i> , <i>to or with chariots</i>
Ab. <i>currū</i> , <i>with a chariot</i>		

60. There are only four neuter *u* stems in Latin (unless we add two more which are found only in the plural).

They take no endings at all in the singular, and in the plural have the endings in 39.

**cornū, horn; stem cornū-**

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	} <b>cornū, horn, etc.</b>	} <b>cornuā, horns</b>
Ac.		
G.		} <b>cornuūm, of horns</b>
D.		
Ab.		} <b>cornībūs, to or with horns</b>

The stem **sū-** absorbs the vowel of the ending only in the D. Ab. Plur., and not always in that.

**sūs, m. f., swine; stem sū-**

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	} <b>sūs</b>	} <b>suēs</b>
Ac.		
G.	} <b>suīs</b>	} <b>suūm</b>
D.		
Ab.		
		<b>suībūs or sūbūs</b>

There are no adjective stems in u.

## 61.

## LIST OF WORDS.

<b>tribūs, f., tribe,</b>	stem <b>tribū-</b>	(D. Ab. Plur. <b>tribūbūs</b> )
<b>dōmūs, f., home,</b>	" <b>dōmū-</b>	
<b>ācūs, m. f., needle,</b>	" <b>ācū-</b>	( " " <b>ācūbus</b> )
<b>arcūs, m., a bow,</b>	" <b>arcū-</b>	( " " <b>arcūbus</b> )
<b>lācūs, m., lake,</b>	" <b>lācū-</b>	( " " <b>lācūbus</b> )
<b>exercītūs, m., army,</b>	" <b>exercītū-</b>	
<b>portūs, m., harbor,</b>	" <b>portū-</b>	( " " <b>portūbus</b>
<b>mānūs, f., hand,</b>	" <b>mānū-</b>	and <b>portībus</b> )
<b>pīnūs, f., pine,</b>	" <b>pīnū-</b>	
<b>currūs, m., chariot,</b>	" <b>currū-</b>	
<b>cornū, n., horns,</b>	" <b>cornū-</b>	
<b>gēnū, n., knee,</b>	" <b>gēnū-</b>	
<b>pēcū, n., cattle,</b>	" <b>pēcū-</b>	
<b>vērū, n., spit,</b>	" <b>vērū-</b>	( " " <b>vērūbūs</b> )



THE VERB **Sūm**, *I am*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>fuērīm</b>	{ <i>I may be or I may have been, etc.</i>	<b>fuērīmūs</b>
2d "	<b>fuērīs</b>		<b>fuērītīs</b>
3d "	<b>fuērīt</b>		<b>fuērīnt</b>

Excepting the first person singular, these forms are the same as those of the future perfect indicative.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>fuissēm</b>	{ <i>I had been or I might have been, etc.</i>	<b>fuissēmūs</b>
2d "	<b>fuissēs</b>		<b>fuissētīs</b>
3d "	<b>fuissēt</b>		<b>fuissent</b>

This tense is formed by attaching to the perfect stem **fu-** the imperfect subjunctive **essēm**, etc., with **i** in place of the initial **e**.

## EXERCISES.

1. *Omnēs tribūs ānīmālīūm fērocēs sunt.* 2. *Olassīs īn portū ērāt.* 3. *Rex exercītūm duxīt.* 4. *Lītōrā lācuūm dēclīvēs fuērānt.* 5. *Currūs sōlīs splendens fuīt.*

1. The gladiator was dragging the animal with his hand into the house. 2. Pines of all kinds were in the mountains. 3. The animals have horns. 4. The maid was scraping the roots with a needle. 5. The home of men is deceptive.

## REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

Some of these stems are used directly as English words, the stem vowel **ū** disappearing. *Lake, tribe,*

*port*, *pine*, are examples. **Ācū-** we see in *acute*, **mānū-** in *manual* (labor done with *the hands*, for instance), **gēnū-** in *genuflection* (a bending of *the knee*).

The *cornea* is the *horny* part of the eyeball; a *domicile* is a *home*.



## STUDY XVII.—NOUNS. STEMS IN O AND E.

62. Noun stems ending in **ō** (masculine and neuter) are inflected by attaching a different set of endings from those used with consonant and close vowel stems. These endings are seen in the following table:

THIRD TABLE OF ENDINGS.

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.	s or —	m	i } s }	ā
Ac.	m			
G.	i			rūm
D.	— (or i) }			
Ab.	—			is

The vowel **ō** of the stem becomes **ū** before a consonant in the singular number and is lost before a vowel in both numbers.

The form of a noun used in address is usually called in English "the nominative case independent"; *e.g.* *Paul*, where are you? The nominative form is used in Latin also for the case of address, but it is called the "vocative" case.

In **ō** stems in which the nominative adds **s**, there is a separate form for the vocative singular. There is no ending, and **ō** becomes **ō**.

**ānīmūs**, m., *soul*; stem **ānīmō-**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>ānīmūs</b> , <i>soul</i>	<b>ānīmī</b> , <i>souls</i>
Voc.	<b>ānīmē</b> , "	—
Ac.	<b>ānīmūm</b> , "	<b>ānīmōs</b> , "
G.	<b>ānīmī</b> , <i>of a soul</i>	<b>ānīmōrūm</b> , <i>of souls</i>
D.	<b>ānīmō</b> , <i>to or with a soul</i>	<b>ānīmīs</b> , <i>to or with souls</i>
Ab.		

**bellūm**, n., *war*; stem **bellō-**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>bellūm</b> , <i>war</i>	<b>bellā</b> , <i>wars</i>
Ac.		
G.	<b>bellī</b> , <i>of war</i>	<b>bellōrūm</b> , <i>of wars</i>
D.	<b>bellō</b> , <i>to or with war</i>	<b>bellīs</b> , <i>to or with wars</i>
Ab.		

**63.** Masculine stems with **r** immediately preceding the final **o** do not take an ending in the N. Sing., and the final **o** disappears.

**gēnēr**, m., *son in law*; stem **gēnērō-**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>gēnēr</b> , <i>son in law</i>	<b>gēnērī</b> , <i>sons in law</i>
Ac.	<b>gēnērūm</b> , "	<b>gēnērōs</b> , "
G.	<b>gēnērī</b> , <i>of a son in law</i>	<b>gēnērōrūm</b> , <i>of sons in law</i>
D.	<b>gēnērō</b> , { <i>to or with a</i>	<b>gēnērīs</b> , { <i>to or with sons</i>
Ab.		

**64.** Masculine stems ending in **rō**, in which a mute immediately precedes **r**, insert **ē** in the nominative, for ease of enunciation. See also **37**, **pātēr**.

**ăġēr**, m., *field*; stem **ăġrō-**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>ăġēr</b> , <i>field</i>	<b>ăġrī</b> , <i>fields</i>
Ac.	<b>ăġrūm</b> , "	<b>ăġrōs</b> , "
G.	<b>ăġrī</b> , <i>of a field</i>	<b>ăġrōrūm</b> , <i>of fields</i>
D.	} <b>ăġrō</b> , <i>to or with a field</i>	<b>ăġrīs</b> , <i>to or with fields</i>
Ab.		

**65.** Noun stems ending in **e** are confused in their inflection.

In the singular number they take the same endings as **o** stems.

In the plural they take the same endings as **u** stems.

Each number shows one variation:

The dative singular has the ending of **i** stems (**i**).

The genitive plural has the ending of **o** stems (**rūm**).

**rēs**, f., *thing*; stem **rē-**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	<b>rēs</b> , <i>thing</i>	<b>rēs</b> , <i>things</i>
Ac.	<b>rēm</b> , "	
G.	<b>rēī</b> , <i>of a thing</i>	<b>rērūm</b> , <i>of things</i>
D.	<b>rēī</b> , <i>to a thing</i>	<b>rēbūs</b> , <i>to or with things</i>
Ab.	<b>rē</b> , <i>with a thing</i>	

Nouns with stem in **e** are defective in their inflection. Only two (**rēs**, *thing*, and **diēs**, *day*) have all the forms of both numbers. About half a dozen others are found in the N. Ac. Plur. No other **e** stems have any plural forms.

**Diēs** is sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine. All other **e** stems are feminine.

## 66.

## LIST OF WORDS.

	Stem.	Eng. Deriv.
cūneūs, m., <i>wedge</i> ,	cūneō-	cuneiform
malleūs, m., <i>hammer</i> ,	malleō-	mallet
fi-liūs, m., <i>son</i> ,	fi-liō-	filial
flūviūs, m., <i>river</i> ,	flūviō-	fluvial
gēniūs, m., <i>native temper</i> ,	gēniō-	genius
glādiūs, m., <i>sword</i> ,	glādiō-	gladiator
rādiūs, m., <i>spoke</i> ,	rādiō-	radius
commentāriūs, m., <i>a note book</i> ,	commentāriō-	commentary
Februāriūs, m., <i>February</i> ,	Februāriō-	February
Jānuāriūs, m., <i>January</i> ,	Jānuāriō-	January
hortūs, f., <i>garden</i> ,	hortō-	horticulture
puēr, m., <i>boy</i> ,	puērō-	puerile
āgēr, m., <i>field</i> ,	āgrō-	agriculture
servūs, m., <i>slave</i> ,	servō-	servitude
dōmīnūs, m., <i>master</i> ,	dōmīnō-	dominate
māgistēr, m., <i>teacher</i> ,	māgistrō-	magistrate
glōbbūs, m., <i>ball</i> ,	glōbbō-	globe
ānīmūs, m., <i>soul</i> ,	ānīmō-	magnanimous
fūmūs, m., <i>smoke</i> ,	fūmō-	fume
dōmūs, f., <i>house</i> ,	dōmō-	domestic
clāvūs, m., <i>nail</i> ,	clāvō-	conclave
clīvūs, m., <i>slope</i> ,	clīvō-	declivity
rīvūs, m., <i>stream</i> ,	rīvō-	river
circūs, m., <i>ring</i> ,	circō-	circus
ēquūs, m., <i>horse</i> ,		equestrian
jōcūs, m., <i>joke</i> ,		joke
lōcūs, m., <i>place</i> ,		locate
porcūs, m., <i>pig</i> ,		pork
dīgītūs, m., <i>finger</i> ,		digit
nāsūs, m., <i>nose</i> ,		nasal
lūdūs, m., <i>game</i> ,		delude
agnūs, m., <i>lamb</i> ,		
annūs, m., <i>year</i> ,		annual

[The student may find  
the stems of other words  
in the list.]

	Stem.	Eng. Deriv.
āsīnūs, m., <i>ass</i> ,		<i>asinine</i>
pugnūs, m., <i>fist</i> ,		
somnūs, m., <i>sleep</i> ,		<i>somnolent</i>
sōnūs, m., <i>sound</i> ,		<i>sonant</i>
glōbūlūs, m., <i>little ball</i> ,		<i>globule</i>
angūlūs, m., <i>corner</i> ,		<i>angle</i>
pōpūlūs, m., <i>people</i> ,		<i>popular</i>
discīpūlūs, m., <i>learner</i> ,		<i>disciple</i>
cāpēr, m., <i>goat</i> ,	cāprō-	<i>caper</i>
nūmērūs, m., <i>number</i> ,		<i>numerate</i>
fābēr, m., <i>smith</i> ,	fābrō-	<i>fabricate</i>
libēr, m., <i>book</i> ,	lībrō-	<i>library</i>
arbītēr, m., <i>judge</i> ,	arbītrō-	<i>arbitrate</i>
mīnistēr, m., <i>servant</i> ,	mīnistrō-	<i>minister</i>
vīr, m., <i>man (the sex)</i> ,	vīrō-	<i>virile</i>
rēs, f., <i>thing</i> ,		
spēs, f., <i>hope</i> ,		
dīēs, m. f., <i>day</i> ,		<i>diurnal</i>
fāmēs, f., <i>hunger</i> ,	fāmī-	<i>famine</i>
fidēs, f., <i>faith</i> ,		<i>fidelity</i>
āciēs, f., <i>edge, line of battle</i> ,		
fāciēs, f., <i>face</i> ,		<i>face</i>
sēriēs, f., <i>a row</i> ,		<i>series</i>
spēcīēs, f., <i>appearance</i> ,		<i>species</i>

A question (for information) is asked by appending -nē to the emphatic word; e.g. *Puernē in hortō est?* Is the boy in the garden?

#### EXERCISES.

1. Puēr in angulō agrī ērāt. 2. Glādiātōr glādiū mănū hābēt. 3. Discīpūlūs dē jōcīs scripsērāt. 4. Servūs cāprūm agrīlēm dūcēbāt. 5. Sōnūs carmīnū coelestīs fuit. 6. Māgistrī lībrōs texērunt. 7. Commentāriī Caesārīs lībrī alō-

quentēs sunt. 8. Suntně servi in āgrō? 9. Servi ět discīpūli in āgrō sunt. 10. Fāciēs puēri fidē ět spē vērax ērāt.

1. The enemy have hope. 2. Horses are bolder than goats. 3. The pigs are fierce with hunger. 4. Men and boys were witnesses of the games. 5. Is sleep the brother of death?

### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

**Cāpēr** means a *goat*. Our verb *caper* relates to the fantastic skipping of that animal.

A *minister* — whether by that term we mean a clergyman, a representative of government at a foreign court, or a member of the cabinet, as in England — is really a *servant* (**mīnistēr**), the agent of some one else.

**Vīr** gives us *virtue* — which, after all, is simply *manliness*.

*Series* and *species* are merely the nominative of the Latin words, while *face* evidently has a part of the stem of **fāciēs**.

---

### STUDY XVIII. — NOUNS. STEMS IN A.

**67.** Noun stems ending in **ā** are inflected by attaching the endings of the table in **62**.

These stems are nearly all feminine. A few are masculine. Some are neuter. The N. Sing. takes no ending. **i** in the ending becomes **e**, attracted by the stem ending **a**.

The D. Sing. has the ending **i** (attracted usually to **e**).

rösă, f., rose; stem rösă-

*Sing.*

N. rösă, rose

Ac. rösăm, "

G. } rösae, of or to a rose

D. }

Ab. rösă, with a rose

*Plur.*

rösae, roses

rösās, "

rösărūm, of roses

} rösīs, to or with roses

*Q Qi*  
*Qe 27m*  
*ei 5*  
*Am a*

## 68.

## LIST OF WORDS.

rösă, f., rose

fămă, f., fame

mappă, f., napkin

ripă, f., bank (of a stream)

barbă, f., beard

herbă, f., sod

ănimă, f., breath

flammă, f., flame

palmă, f., palm (of the hand)

plumă, f., feather

silvă, f., a wood

valvă, f., folding door

jănuă, f., gate

stătuă, f., statue

ăquă, f., water

vaccă, f., cow

rubrică, f., red paint

fugă, f., flight

rugă, f., a wrinkle

tăgă, f., cloak

bătă, f., beet

causă, f., cause

chartă, f., paper

crătă, f., chalk

crustă, f., rind

mattă, f., mat

nătă, f., mark

noză, f., hurt

orbită, f., wheel track

pausă, f., pause

portă, f., gate

rătă, f., wheel

caudă, f., tail

undă, f., water

cătănă, f., chain

vână, f., vein

răpină, f., pillage

ruină, f., a fall

răgînă, f., queen

doctrină, f., learning

făbülă, f., narrative

tăbülă, f., plank

scintillă, f., spark

ăquillă, f., eagle

candělă, f., candle

cămeră, f., chamber

vespără, f., evening

umbră, f., shadow

litră, f., letter (of the alphabet)



**Flōrā**, f., the goddess of flowers

**āpertūrā**, f., an opening

**captūrā**, f., capture

**conjectūrā**, f., a guess

**cultūrā**, f., cultivation

**littērātūrā**, f., writing

**mensūrā**, f., a measure

**nātūrā**, f., nature

**scriptūrā**, f., a writing

**stātūrā**, f., stature

**textūrā**, f., a web

**vītā**, f., life

**fēmīnā**, f., woman

**lūnā**, f., moon

**terrā**, f., earth

**glōriā**, f., glory

**viā**, f., way, road

**puellā**, f., girl

aut, or.

### EXERCISES.

1. Rōsae in hortō rēgis sunt. 2. Ānimā vitae in ānimālī  
fuīt. 3. Plūmae āviūm ēlēgantēs sunt. 4. Barbā vīrō nōn  
fēmīnae est. 5. Suntnē nāvēs hōstiūm sūb mārīs undīs?  
6. Tōgā ōrātōrīs hōmīnēm tēgīt. 7. Herbā in rūpīs est.  
8. Terrā ēt lūnā lūcēs sunt. 9. Rēgīnā terrās ēt urbēs  
rexīt. 10. Terrā ēt mārē sūb hostībūs sunt.

1. The evening is under the light of the moon.  
2. Men and all animals have light. 3. The house  
is covered with flames. 4. Woman draws man to  
safety or to death. 5. The shades of night cover  
the traveller.

### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

Many English words are the same as the stem of  
Latin nouns in *a*, with the omission of that letter,  
and sometimes the addition of an English "e" to  
what remains. Such are *rose*, *fame*, *herb*, *palm*, *statue*,  
*crust*, and many others.

*Map*, *mat*, and *flame* show also the omission of a  
needless consonant from the Latin stem.

**Mappă** means a *napkin*; the same word was then used for a *painted cloth*; hence for the representation of countries painted on cloth; and then for the representation of countries, etc., on any material.

**Rubrică** means *red paint*. In the mediæval Latin church service, explanatory directions interspersed through the various offices of worship were written in red ink, and hence were called *rubricæ*. From this, any such scattered explanations are called *rubrics*, without any reference to color.

*Fable*, from *făbălă*, and *table*, from *tăbălă*, show the easy omission of "ă" between two consonants for ease of enunciation.

*Glory* is from *glōrī*. If we trace the history of the word, we should find that the Latin nude stem *glōrī* became *glorie* in French; and we are familiar with our use of "y" for the French "ie," as in "Mary" for "Marie," and the like. Many English words were French before they were English, and Latin before they were French. This accounts for not a few variations in the spelling of Latin stems in our English words.



## STUDY XIX. — ADJECTIVES. STEMS IN O AND A.

69. Many adjectives are inflected with an *o* stem in the masculine and neuter, and an *a* stem in the feminine.

*cārus*, *dear*; stems *cārō-*, *cārā-*.

*Sing.*

	M.	N.	F.
N.	<i>cārus</i>	<i>cārūm</i>	<i>cārā</i>
Voc.	<i>cārē</i>		
Ac.	<i>cārūm</i>		<i>cārām</i>
G.	<i>cārī</i>	<i>cārō</i>	<i>cārae</i>
D. }			
Ab. }			<i>cārā</i>

*Plur.*

	M.	N.	F.
N.	<i>cārī</i>	<i>cārā</i>	<i>cārae</i>
Ac.	<i>cārōs</i>		<i>cārās</i>
G.	<i>cārōrūm</i>		<i>cārārūm</i>
D. }		<i>cārīs</i>	
Ab. }			

*miser*, *unfortunate*; stems *miserō-*, *miserā-*.

*Sing.*

	M.	N.	F.
N.	<i>miser</i>	<i>miserūm</i>	<i>miserā</i>
Ac.	<i>miserūm</i>		<i>miserām</i>
G.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserāe</i>
D. }			
Ab. }			<i>miserā</i>

*Plur.*

	M.	N.	F.
N.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserāe</i>
Ac.	<i>miserōs</i>		<i>miserās</i>
G.	<i>miserōrūm</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserārūm</i>
D. }			
Ab. }			

**pīgēr**, *slow*; stems **pīgrō-**, **pīgrā-**.

*Sing.*

	M.	N.	F.
N.	pīgēr	pīgrūm	pīgrā
Ac.	pīgrūm		pīgrām
G.	pīgrī		} pīgrae
D.	pīgrō		
Ab.			

*Plur.*

	M.	N.	F.
N.	pīgrī	pīgrā	pīgrae
Ac.	pīgrōs }		pīgrās
G.	pīgrōrūm		pīgrārūm
D.	pīgrīs		
Ab.			

**70.** Adjectives are compared in the superlative degree by attaching the suffix **-issīmō-** (ǎ-) to the stem of the positive.

**fēlix**, stem **fēlic-**, *happy*; **fēlicissīmūs**, **ūm**, **ǎ**, stem **fēlicissīmō-** (ǎ-), *happiest*.

If the stem of the positive ends in a vowel, this vowel disappears in the comparative and superlative.

**tristis** stem **tristī-**, *sad*; **tristior**, *sadder*; **tristissīmūs**, *saddest*.

A few adjectives have in the superlative the suffix **-līmō-** (ǎ-), instead of **-issīmō-** (ǎ-).

**fācilis**, stem **fācili-**, *easy*; **fācilior**, *easier*; **fācillīmūs**, *easiest*.

## 71.

## LIST OF WORDS.

<i>bōnūs, ūm, ā, good,</i>	Eng. deriv. <i>benefactor</i>
<i>mālūs, ūm, ā, bad,</i>	" <i>malefactor</i>
<i>magnūs, ūm, ā, large,</i>	" <i>magnify</i>
<i>parvūs, ūm, ā, small,</i>	
<i>cārūs, ūm, ā, dear,</i>	
<i>multūs, ūm, ā, much (in plur. many),</i>	" <i>multiply</i>
<i>altūs, ūm, ā, high, deep,</i>	" <i>altitude</i>
<i>longūs, ūm, ā, long,</i>	" <i>longitude</i>
<i>lātūs, ūm, ā, wide,</i>	" <i>latitude</i>
<i>albūs, ūm, ā, white,</i>	" <i>album</i>
<i>nīgēr, nīgrūm, ā, black,</i>	" <i>negro</i>
<i>rūbēr, rūbrūm, ā, red,</i>	" <i>rubric</i>
<i>ācidūs, ūm, ā, sharp, acid,</i>	" <i>acid</i>
<i>altēr, ūm, ā, other (of two),</i>	" <i>alternate</i>
<i>neutēr, trūm, ā, neither (of two),</i>	" <i>neuter</i>
<i>arduūs, ūm, ā, difficult,</i>	" <i>arduous</i>
<i>ārīdūs, ūm, ā, dry,</i>	" <i>arid</i>
<i>concāvūs, ūm, ā, hollow,</i>	" <i>concave</i>
<i>crassūs, ūm, ā, thick,</i>	" <i>crass</i>
<i>crūdūs, ūm, ā, raw,</i>	" <i>crude</i>
<i>frīgidūs, ūm, ā, cold,</i>	" <i>frigid</i>
<i>horridūs, ūm, ā, rough,</i>	" <i>horrid</i>
<i>sānūs, ūm, ā, sound, rational,</i>	" <i>sane</i>
<i>jōcōsūs, ūm, ā, sportive,</i>	" <i>jocose</i>
<i>laxūs, ūm, ā, loose,</i>	" <i>lax</i>
<i>mēdiūs, ūm, ā, middle,</i>	" <i>mediate</i>
<i>nūdūs, ūm, ā, naked,</i>	" <i>nude</i>
<i>silvānūs, ūm, ā, woody,</i>	" <i>sylvan</i>
<i>plēnūs, ūm, ā, full,</i>	" <i>plenty</i>
<i>dūrūs, ūm, ā, hard, difficult,</i>	" <i>endure</i>
<i>fērus, ūm, ā, wild,</i>	" <i>ferocity</i>

## EXERCISES.

1. Leōnēs ānimālīā fērocissimā sunt. 2. Māriā altā ēt lātā  
 ērant. 3. Montēs frigidī arbōribūs plēnī sunt. 4. Dīēs brē-

vissimae aridae sunt. 5. Puellae parvae in hortis latis erunt. 6. Vita animalium non brevis est. 7. Puer librum puellae parvae dat. 8. Silva horrida est. 9. Luna splendens lumine albo est. 10. Multi viri in urbibus plenis fuerunt.

1. The longest rivers are deep. 2. Men are rational animals. 3. The highest mountains are white. 4. Many things are difficult for men. 5. Is the boy's face white?

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

Many stems, dropping the final vowel (nude stems), are used directly as English words. Examples are: *acid*, *arid*, *concave* (see 68, REMARKS), *crass*, *crude*, *horrid*, *lax*.

*Crass*, from *crassō*-, means *thick*, *dense*. Hence it is applied, for example, to ignorance; *crass* ignorance meaning *dense* ignorance.

*Crude*, from *crūdō*-, means *raw*. Then we use it metaphorically as applied to thought or character or conduct; as, a *crude* book.

*Negro* came into our language from the Spanish word *negro*, a black man. But it was originally the Latin stem *nigrō*-, *black*.

*Alter*, the English verb, means to make something *other* than it is, from the Latin *altēr*.

Longer words, in which some of these Latin adjective stems appear, like *benefactor*, we shall presently find to come from a Latin compound word. A *benefactor* is a *well-doer*.

## STUDY XX. — NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

72. Numeral adjectives in Latin are of three principal kinds, — cardinals, ordinals, and distributives.

Cardinals show *how many*, as *trēs*, *three*.

Ordinals show *what one* (in order), as *tertiūs*, *third*.

Distributives show *how many in a group*, as *binī*, *two each*.

Except the first three, the hundreds above 100, and the plural thousands (*mīliā*), the cardinals are not inflected.

## 73.

## LIST OF WORDS.

Cardinals.	Ordinals (inflected like <i>prīmūs</i> ).	Distributives (inflected like <i>singūlī</i> ).
1 <i>ūnūs, ūm, ā</i>	<i>prīmūs, ūm, ā</i>	<i>singūlī, ā, ae</i>
2 <i>duō, ā, ae</i>	<i>sēcundūs</i>	<i>binī</i>
3 <i>trēs, triā</i>	<i>tertiūs</i>	<i>ternī</i>
4 <i>quattuōr</i>	<i>quartūs</i>	<i>quāternī</i>
5 <i>quinquē</i>	<i>quintūs</i>	<i>quīnī</i>
6 <i>sex</i>	<i>sextūs</i>	<i>sēnī</i>
7 <i>septēm</i>	<i>septimūs</i>	<i>septēnī</i>
8 <i>octō</i>	<i>octāvūs</i>	<i>octōnī</i>
9 <i>nōvēm</i>	<i>nōnūs</i>	<i>nōvēnī</i>
10 <i>dēcēm</i>	<i>dēcīmūs</i>	<i>dēnī</i>
11 <i>undēcīm</i>	<i>undēcīmūs</i>	<i>undēnī</i>
12 <i>duōdēcīm</i>	<i>duōdēcīmūs</i>	<i>duōdēnī</i>
13 <i>trēdēcīm</i>	<i>tertiūs dēcīmūs</i>	<i>ternī dēnī</i>
14 <i>quattuordēcīm</i>	<i>quartūs     “</i>	<i>quāternī dēnī</i>
15 <i>quindēcīm</i>	<i>quintūs     “</i>	<i>quīnī     “</i>
16 <i>sēdēcīm</i>	<i>sextūs     “</i>	<i>sēnī     “</i>
17 <i>septendēcīm</i>	<i>septimūs   “</i>	<i>septēnī   “</i>
18 <i>duōdēvigintī</i>	<i>duodēvicēsīmūs</i>	<i>duōdēvicēnī</i>
19 <i>undēvigintī</i>	<i>undēvicēsīmūs</i>	<i>undēvicēnī</i>
20 <i>vigintī</i>	<i>vicēsīmūs</i>	<i>vicēnī</i>
21 <i>vigintī ūnūs or ūnūs ēt vigintī</i>	<i>vicēsīmūs prīmūs</i>	<i>vicēnī singūlī</i>

Cardinals.	Ordinals (inflected like <i>prīmūs</i> ).	Distributives (inflected like <i>singŭlī</i> ).
30 <i>trīgintā</i>	<i>trīcēsīmūs</i>	<i>trīcēnī</i>
40 <i>quadrāgintā</i>	<i>quadrāgēsīmūs</i>	<i>quadrāgēnī</i>
50 <i>quīnquāgintā</i>	<i>quīnquāgēsīmūs</i>	<i>quīnquāgēnī</i>
60 <i>sexāgintā</i>	<i>sexāgēsīmūs</i>	<i>sexāgēnī</i>
70 <i>septuāgintā</i>	<i>septuāgēsīmūs</i>	<i>septuāgēnī</i>
80 <i>octōgintā</i>	<i>octōgēsīmūs</i>	<i>octōgēnī</i>
90 <i>nōnāgintā</i>	<i>nōnāgēsīmūs</i>	<i>nōnāgēnī</i>
100 <i>centūm</i>	<i>centēsīmūs</i>	<i>centēnī</i>
101 <i>centūm ēt ūnūs</i>	<i>centēsīmūs</i> <i>prīmūs</i>	<i>centēnī singŭlī</i>
120 <i>centūm ēt vīgintī</i>	<i>centēsīmūs</i> <i>vīcēsīmūs</i>	<i>centēnī vīcēnī</i>
200 <i>dūcentī, ā, ae</i>	<i>dūcentēsīmūs</i>	<i>dūcēnī</i>
300 <i>trēcentī, ā, ae</i>	<i>trēcentēsīmūs</i>	<i>trēcēnī</i>
400 <i>quadrīngentī, ā, ae</i>	<i>quadrīngentēsīmūs</i>	<i>quadrīngēnī</i>
500 <i>quīngentī, ā, ae</i>	<i>quīngentēsīmūs</i>	<i>quīngēnī</i>
600 <i>sexcentī, ā, ae</i>	<i>sexcentēsīmūs</i>	<i>sexcēnī</i>
700 <i>septīngentī, ā, ae</i>	<i>septīngentēsīmūs</i>	<i>septīngēnī</i>
800 <i>octīngentī, ā, ae</i>	<i>octīngentēsīmūs</i>	<i>octīngēnī</i>
900 <i>nongentī, ā, ae</i>	<i>nongentēsīmūs</i>	<i>nongēnī</i>
1000 <i>millē</i>	<i>millēsīmus</i>	<i>singŭlā mīliā</i>

74. There are some other kinds of numerals. The multiplicatives show *how many fold*. Some of them are as follows: *simplex*, *single*, *dūplex*, *double*, *trīplex*, *triple*, *quādrūplex*, *quadruple*, *dēcemplex*, *tenfold*. The stem in each of these ends in *-plic-*, and they are inflected after the usual manner of palatal adjective stems (42).

#### EXERCISES.

1. *Centūm annī tempūs longūm sunt.* 2. *Dūcentī vīrī ēt trēcentae virgīnēs in urbē ērant.* 3. *Quartūs mons ērāt altūs.*





4. *Quinquē librī ērant dūri.* 5. *Septimūs puēr altūs est.*  
 6. *Binæ stellæ in coelō sunt.* 7. *Sēcundā nāvīs longissimā fuit.* 8. *Hōmīnēs ērant dēni.* 9. *Vigintī cānēs fērocēs dentēs ostendunt (show).* 10. *Viā est dūplex.*

1. Nine cities are full of (= with) people. 2. The fifth city is small. 3. The tree is double. 4. The soldiers were in-groups-of-four. 5. A thousand stars are in the heaven.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

A *unit* is a single thing. A *duet* is sung by two persons, and a *trio* by three persons. *Duet* comes from *duō*, but through the Italian word *duetto*, which accounts for the final syllable *-et*. *Trio* is also an Italian word, formed from the stem *tri-* of *trēs*.

The Latin stem without its vowel (the nude stem) is often used as an English word. *Prime* and *second* have an obvious meaning. The latter comes to us from a French word, which accounts for the change from *u* to *o*. A *quart* is the fourth part of a gallon.

An *octavo* book is one in which the sheets are folded so as to make eight leaves; each leaf being thus an *eighth* of the sheet. *Octavo* is really the ablative case, with the noun *fōliō* (from *fōliūm*, *sheet*) understood. A book was said to be *in fōliō*, *in quartō*, *in octāvō*, etc.

A *cent* is the hundredth part of a dollar, and a *mill* is the thousandth part of a dollar, from *centūm* and *millē*, respectively.

*Dūplex* is itself used as an English word; and its stem *dūplio-* gives us *duplicity*, "doubleness" of conduct.

## STUDY XXI. — PECULIAR INFLECTIONS.

75. There are some peculiar inflections of a few nouns and adjectives, which are explained either by endings once common but generally disused in classical Latin, or by the use of two or more stems for one word (51, at end).

The following nouns show these same peculiarities together with some unusual vowel changes:

<b>bōs</b> , m. f., <i>ox, cow</i> ; stem <b>bōv-</b> .		<b>nix</b> , f., <i>snow</i> ; stems <b>nīg-</b> , <b>nīv-</b> , <b>nīvī-</b> .	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <b>bōs</b> }	<b>bōvēs</b>	<b>nix</b> }	<b>nīvēs</b>
Ac. <b>bōvēm</b> }		<b>nīvēm</b> }	
G. <b>bōvīs</b>	<b>boŭm</b>	<b>nīvīs</b>	<b>nīvīŭm</b>
D. <b>bōvī</b> }	<b>bōbŭs</b> or <b>būbŭs</b>	<b>nīvī</b> }	<b>nīvībŭs</b>
Ab. <b>bōvē</b> }		<b>nīvē</b> }	

Of course **v** is the same as **u**. In the N. Sing. and D. Ab. Plur. **o** and **u** contract to **ō**, in the latter two places **i** disappearing.

<b>sēnex</b> , m., <i>old man</i> ; stems <b>sēn-</b> , <b>sēnēc-</b> .		<b>vīs</b> , f., <i>force</i> ; stems <b>vī-</b> , <b>vīrī-</b> .	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <b>sēnex</b> }	<b>sēnēs</b>	<b>vīs</b> }	<b>vīrēs</b>
Ac. <b>sēnēm</b> }		<b>vīm</b> }	
G. <b>sēnīs</b>	<b>sēnŭm</b>	<b>vīs</b>	<b>vīrīŭm</b>
D. <b>sēnī</b> }	<b>sēnībŭs</b>	<b>vī</b>	<b>vīrībŭs</b>
Ab. <b>sēnē</b> }			

In the Sing. the vowel in the case ending disappears.

**Juppītēr**, m., *Jupiter*; stems **Juppītēr-**, **Jōv-**.

*Sing.*

N. **Juppītēr**

Ac. **Jōvēm**

G. **Jōvīs**

D. **Jōvī**

Ab. **Jōvē**

**dōmūs**, f., *house*; stems **dōmū-**, **dōmō-**.

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

N. **dōmūs**

**dōmūs**

Ac. **dōmūm**

{ **dōmūs**  
**dōmōs**

G. **dōmūs**

{ **dōmuūm**  
**dōmōrūm**

D. { **dōmuī**  
**dōmō**

**dōmībūs**

Ab. { **dōmū**  
**dōmō**

**76.** The first two cardinal numerals are peculiar in some of the endings of their inflection.

**ūnūs**, *one*; stems **ūn-**, **ūnō-**.

*Sing.*

M.

N.

F.

N. **ūnūs**

**ūnūm**

{ **ūnā**

Voc. **ūnē**

Ac. **ūnūm**

**ūnām**

G.

**ūnīūs**

D.

**ūnī**

Ab. **ūnō**

**ūnā**

In the G. Sing. **ūnūs** takes an old ending of consonant stems.

**duō**, *two*; stem **duō-**.

*Plur.*

	M.	N.	F.
N.	<b>duō</b>		
Ac.	<b>duōs</b>	<b>duō</b>	<b>duae</b>
	<b>duō</b>		<b>duās</b>
G.		<b>duōrūm</b>	<b>duārūm</b>
D.			
Ab.		<b>duōbūs</b>	<b>duābūs</b>

The ending is usually omitted in the N. Ac. Masc. and Neut.

In the D. Ab. the ending for consonant stems is taken, **i** being absorbed.

**Trēs** is declined regularly as an **i** stem (**tri-**).

**Ambō**, *both*, is declined like **duō**.

**77.** Some adjectives in their *comparison* show two or more stems.

	<b>bōnūs</b> , <i>good</i>	<b>mēliōr</b> , <i>better</i>	<b>optīmūs</b> , <i>best</i>
Stems	<b>bōnō-</b>	<b>mēl-iōr-</b>	<b>opt-īmō-</b>
	<b>mālūs</b> , <i>bad</i>	<b>pējōr</b> , <i>worse</i>	<b>pessīmūs</b> , <i>worst</i>
"	<b>mālō-</b>	<b>pēj-</b>	<b>pess-īmō-</b>
	<b>magnūs</b> , <i>large</i>	<b>mājōr</b> , <i>larger</i>	<b>maxīmūs</b> , <i>largest</i>
"	<b>magnō-</b>	<b>māj-</b>	<b>max-īmō-</b>
	<b>parvūs</b> , <i>small</i>	<b>mīnōr</b> , <i>smaller</i>	<b>mīnīmus</b> , <i>smallest</i>
"	<b>parvō-</b>	<b>mīn-</b>	<b>mīn-īmō-</b>
	<b>multūs</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>plūs</b> , <i>more</i>	<b>plūrīmūs</b> , <i>most</i>
"	<b>multō-</b>	<b>plūs-</b>	<b>plūr-īmō-</b>

**Plūs** (stem **plūs-**, **s** changed to **r** between two vowels, **38**) has in the singular only the neuter. In the plural it is regular: **plūrēs**, **plūrā**, etc.

	<b>extērūs</b> , <i>outward</i>	<b>extērīōr</b> , <i>outer</i>	<b>extrēmūs</b> ( <b>extīmūs</b> ), <i>outmost</i>
Stems	<b>extērō-</b>	<b>extēr-iōr-</b>	<b>extr-ēmō-</b> ( <b>ext-īmō-</b> )

	<b>infērūs</b> , <i>low</i>	<b>infērīōr-</b> , <i>lower</i>	<b>infimūs</b> (or <b>īmūs</b> ), <i>lowest</i>
Stems	<b>infērō-</b>	<b>infēr-iōr-</b>	<b>inf-īmō-</b> ( <b>īmō-</b> )
	<b>sūpērūs</b> , <i>high</i>	<b>sūpērīōr</b> , <i>higher</i>	<b>sūprēmūs</b> ( <b>summūs</b> ), <i>highest</i>
"	<b>sūpērō-</b>	<b>sūpēr-iōr-</b>	<b>sūpr-ēmō-</b> ( <b>sum-mō-</b> )
	<b>postērūs</b> , <i>next</i>	<b>postērīōr</b> ,	<b>postrēmūs</b> ( <b>postū-</b> <b>mūs</b> ), <i>next</i>
"	<b>postērō-</b>	<b>postēr-iōr-</b>	<b>postr-ēmō-</b> ( <b>post-</b> <b>ūmō-</b> )

78. A Roman man usually had three names. The first name (**praenōmēn**), as with us, was his *personal* name (which was often represented by its initial). The second name (**nōmēn**) was the name of his *tribe*. The third name (**cognōmēn**) was the name of his *family*. Thus **Publiūs Cornēliūs Scīpiō** belonged to the *Scipio* family of the *Cornelian* tribe, and his individual name was *Publius*.

Sometimes a fourth name (**agnōmēn**) was added to denote some personal quality or exploit. Thus **Publiūs Cornēliūs Scīpiō Africānūs** had won military renown in Africa.

A Roman woman usually had only the name of the *tribe*, as **Cornēliā**. A younger sister was denoted by a numeral, as **Cornēliā Sēcundā**, **Cornēliā Tertiā**.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Bōvēs pigrae in herbīs sunt.
2. Terrā nīvē albā ērat.
3. Juppītēr crīnēm (crīnis, *hair*) albūm sēnī dāt.
4. P. Cornēliūs Nāsō vī mājōr quām Caiūs Jūliūs Scīpiō ērat.
5. Vīrī optīmī in urbē Romā ērant.
6. Plūrīmī hōmīnēs spēm mag-

nām hābent. 7. Puēri mīnōrēs quām leōnēs sunt. 8. Lībrūm tūī puērō dāt. 9. Lībrōs duōbūs puēris dāt. 10. Oānēs pējōrēs quām fēlēs sunt.

1. The largest people are not always (*sempēr*) the best. 2. The lowest men are worse than the highest animals. 3. More old men than women are in the city. 4. Larger oxen and the smallest cows are in the islands. 5. Is snow the worst evil (*mālūm*)?

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

These stems are found in many English words, — *bōv-* in *bovine*, *sēn-* in *senile*, *optīmō-* in *optimist*; others of the superlatives in *pessimist*, *maximum*, *minimum*, *extreme*, *supreme*.

To *ameliorate* a state of things is to make it *better* (*mēliōr-*).

*Jupiter* and *Jove* are both used as English words.

*Dōmā-* we see in *domicile* and *domestic*.

*Ūnūs* appears in *unit*, *duō* in *duel*, *trī-* in *trio*, *amb-* in *ambidextrous*. The latter, by the way, has another Latin stem, *dextērō-*, which means “the right hand.” So *ambidextrous* means that *both* hands are *right* hands; *i.e.* both are used as conveniently as people in general use the right hand only.

Most of the comparatives will be recognized at once as English words, — *major*, *minor*, *plus*, *exterior*, *inferior*, *superior*, *posterior*.

The changed stem of *plūs* (*plūr-*) appears in *plural*.

## STUDY XXII. — CONSONANT VERBS. PERFECT STEMS. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

79. We have seen (Studies VII. and VIII.) that the stem of a verb ending in a mute usually forms the perfect stem by adding **s**, and the supine stem by adding **t**.

a. Many liquid stems (and a few others) form the perfect by adding **u**.

**ālō**, *I nourish*, **ālui**, **altūs** (or **ālitūs**), verb stem **āl-**

In these verbs there is often a connecting vowel (**i**) between the stem and the supine suffix **t**.

<b>mōlō</b> , <i>I grind</i> ,	<b>mōlui</b> ,	<b>molitūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>mōl-</b>
<b>cōlō</b> , <i>I cultivate</i> ,	<b>cōlui</b> ,	<b>cultūs</b> ,	“ <b>cōl-</b>

In the supine stem, the stem vowel often becomes **ū**.

<b>consūlō</b> , <i>I consult</i> ,	<b>consūlui</b> ,	<b>consultūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>consūl-</b>
<b>occūlō</b> , <i>I hide</i> ,	<b>occūlui</b> ,	<b>occultūs</b> ,	“ <b>occūl-</b>
<b>sērō</b> , <i>I connect</i> ,	<b>sēruī</b> ,	<b>sertūs</b> ,	“ <b>sēr-</b>
<b>texō</b> , <i>I weave</i> ,	<b>texui</b> ,	<b>textūs</b> ,	“ <b>tex-</b>

b. A few verbs form the perfect stem without any suffix at all. In some of these, however, the stem itself is changed.

**prēhendō**, *I grasp*, **prēhendi**, **prehensūs**, verb stem **prēhend-**  
**ēdō**, *I eat*, **ēdī**, **ēsūs**, “ **ēd-**

In this verb the stem vowel is lengthened in the perfect.

**āgō**, *I drive*, **ēgī**, **actūs**, verb stem **āg-**

In this verb the stem vowel is lengthened in the perfect, and at the same time changed to **e**.

**cānō**, *I sing*, **cēcīnī**, **cantūs**, verb stem **cān-**

In this verb the stem is *reduplicated* to form the perfect. The reduplication consists in prefixing the first consonant of the stem with *ě*. In some reduplicated verbs the first vowel of the stem is used in place of *ě*.

It will be seen that the stem vowel *ǎ* in *cǎn-* becomes *ĩ* in the reduplicated perfect.

c. Verb stems in *u* generally make no change in the perfect. The *u* usually is lengthened in the supine.

**stātuō**, *I place*,    **stātuĩ**,    **stātūtūs**,    verb stem **stātũ-**

## 80.

## LIST OF WORDS.

<b>lēgō</b> , <i>I read</i> ,	<b>lēgĩ</b> ,	<b>lectūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>lēg-</b>
<b>scăbō</b> , <i>I scratch</i> ,	<b>scăbĩ</b> ,	—,	“ <b>scăb-</b>
<b>cădō</b> , <i>I fall</i> ,	<b>cēcĩdĩ</b> ,	<b>cāsūs</b> ,	“ <b>căd-</b>
<b>currō</b> , <i>I run</i> ,	<b>cūcurrĩ</b> ,	<b>cursūs</b> ,	“ <b>curr-</b>

In the supine stem one *r* drops.

**solvō**, *I loose*,    **solvĩ**,    **sōlūtūs**,    verb stem **solv-**

It will be noticed that *v* is the same as *u*.

<b>vertō</b> , <i>I turn</i> ,	<b>vertĩ</b> ,	<b>versūs</b> ,	verb stem <b>vert-</b>
<b>volvō</b> , <i>I roll</i> ,	<b>volvĩ</b> ,	<b>vōlūtūs</b> ,	“ <b>volv-</b>
<b>bībō</b> , <i>I drink</i> ,	<b>bībĩ</b> ,	<b>bībītūs</b> ,	“ <b>bīb-</b>
<b>vōmō</b> , <i>I vomit</i> ,	<b>vōmuĩ</b> ,	<b>vōmītūs</b> ,	“ <b>vōm-</b>
<b>ăcuō</b> , <i>I sharpen</i> ,	<b>ăcuĩ</b> ,	<b>ăcūtūs</b> ,	“ <b>ăcũ-</b>
<b>fallō</b> , <i>I deceive</i> ,	<b>fěfelli</b> ,	<b>falsūs</b> ,	“ <b>fall-</b>
<b>gěrō</b> , <i>I carry</i> ,	<b>gessĩ</b> ,	<b>gestūs</b> ,	“ <b>gěs-</b>
<b>pellō</b> , <i>I drive</i> ,	<b>pěpūli</b> ,	<b>pulsūs</b> ,	“ <b>pěl-</b>

81. The subjunctive mood of **sūm**, *I am*, has already been given (Studies XIV.–XVI.).

The Subjunctive of **carpō** is as follows:



*Subjunctive Mood.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carpām</b>	<b>carpāmūs</b>	<b>carpār</b>	<b>carpāmūr</b>
2d    "	<b>carpās</b>	<b>carpātīs</b>	<b>carpāris</b>	<b>carpāmīni</b>
3d    "	<b>carpāt</b>	<b>carpant</b>	<b>carpātūr</b>	<b>carpantūr</b>

It will be seen that this tense is formed by attaching to the present stem, **carp-**, the personal endings (Study XII.) with the connecting vowel **a**.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carpērēm</b>	<b>carpērēmūs</b>	<b>carpērēr</b>	<b>carpērēmūr</b>
2d    "	<b>carpērēs</b>	<b>carpērētīs</b>	<b>carpērērīs</b>	<b>carpērēmīni</b>
3d    "	<b>carpērēt</b>	<b>carpērent</b>	<b>carpērētūr</b>	<b>carpērentūr</b>

This tense is formed by attaching to the present stem the personal endings with the connecting syllable **-ēre**.

## PERFECT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carpsērīm</b>	<b>carpsērīmūs</b>	<b>carptūs sīm</b>	<b>carptī sīmūs</b>
2d    "	<b>carpsērīs</b>	<b>carpsērītīs</b>	" <b>sīs</b>	" <b>sītīs</b>
3d    "	<b>carpsērīt</b>	<b>carpsērīnt</b>	" <b>sīt</b>	" <b>sīnt</b>

The active uses the perfect stem and the same suffix as **fuērīm** (Study XVI.). The passive uses the perfect participle with the present subjunctive **sīm** (Study XIV.) as an auxiliary.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

## Active Voice.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carpaissēm</b>	<b>carpaissēmūs</b>
2d    "	<b>carpaissēs</b>	<b>carpaissētīs</b>
3d    "	<b>carpaissēt</b>	<b>carpaissent</b>

## Passive Voice.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>carptūs essēm</b>	<b>carpti essēmūs</b>
2d    "	<b>"   essēs</b>	<b>"   essētīs</b>
3d    "	<b>"   essēt</b>	<b>"   essent</b>

The active uses the perfect stem and the same suffix as **fuissēm** (Study XVI.). The passive uses the perfect participle with the present subjunctive **essēm** (Study XV.) as an auxiliary.

## EXERCISES.

1. Servūs āgrōs cōluērāt. 2. Puērī pānēm ēdērunt. 3. Āvēs dōmīnī cēcīnērant. 4. Leōnēs ēt cānēs actī sunt. 5. Librōs bōnōs lēgīmūs. 6. Hostēs īn fūgām vērtīt. 7. Oicērō librōs scripsīt ūt lēgērēmūs. 8. Sī currēmūs, hostēs ēvādērēmūs (*escape*). 9. Servōs īn mūrī āpertūrā occūlī. 10. Puellae tōgām texuērunt.

1. The maids were weaving. 2. The maids had woven. 3. The servants had been hidden. 4. The soldiers will have eaten. 5. They have driven the enemy.

## REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

From these verb stems we have some English words. **Mŏl-** gives us *molar* — the *grinding* teeth are *molars*. A *scab* is something one is apt to *scratch* — **scāb-**. To *solve* a problem is to *loosen* it — **solv-**. To *invert* is to

*turn* over; a thing is *involved* when it is *rolled* up together; to *imbibe* is to *drink in*.

Derivatives are common from the supine stems. *Culture*, from **cult-**, is cultivation. *Consult* is a verb, while *occult*, meaning *hidden*, is an adjective. **Act-** gives us *act* and *active*. From **cant-** comes *incantation*, while *chant* has nearly the same form; the "h" showing that the Latin stem was a French word before it became English.



### STUDY XXIII. — VERBS. STEMS IN A LONG VOWEL. Ī, Ē, Ā.

82. *a.* Verb stems ending in *ī* add **v** to form the perfect, and **t** to form the supine stem.

**audiō**, *I hear*,      **audīvi**,      **audītūs**,      verb stem **audī-**

The inflection is the same as that of consonant and *ū* stems.

Short **e** and **i** in the ending are absorbed by the **ī** of the stem.

#### *Indicative Mood.*

##### PRESENT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>audiō</b>	<b>audīmūs</b>	<b>audiōr</b>	<b>audīmūr</b>
2d    "	<b>audīs</b>	<b>audītis</b>	<b>audīris</b>	<b>audīmīni</b>
3d    "	<b>audīt</b>	<b>audiunt</b>	<b>audītūr</b>	<b>audiuntūr</b>

The imperfect active, **audiēbām**, **audiēbās**, etc., and the imperfect passive, **audiēbār**, **audiēbāris**, etc., are regular.

The same is true of the future, **audiām**, **audiēs**, etc.

The perfect active, **audīvī**, pluperfect, **audivērām**, and future perfect, **audivērō**, and the passive **audītūs sūm**, **ērām**, **ērō**, are inflected regularly.

The subjunctive active, **audiām**, **audirēm**, **audivērīm**, **audivissēm**, and the passive **audiār**, **audirēr**, **audītūs sīm**, **essēm**, are also regular.

b. Verb stems ending in **ē** add **v** to form the perfect and **t** to form the supine stem.

**compleō**, *I complete*, **complēvī**, **complētūs**, verb stem **complē-**

The inflection is like that of consonant stems, except in the future indicative, which has a different set of endings.

**ē** of the stem absorbs a following vowel, except **a** and **o**.

### *Indicative Mood.*

#### PRESENT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>compleō</b>	<b>complēmūs</b>	<b>compleōr</b>	<b>complēmūr</b>
2d    "	<b>complēs</b>	<b>complētis</b>	<b>complēris</b>	<b>complēmīni</b>
3d    "	<b>complēt</b>	<b>complent</b>	<b>complētūr</b>	<b>complentūr</b>

The imperfect active, **complēbām**, passive **complēbār**, etc., are regular.

The endings of the future are as follows:

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	-bō	-bīmūs	-bōr	-bīmūr
2d    "	-bīs	-bītis	-bēris	-bīmīni
3d    "	-bit	-bunt	-bitūr	-buntūr

The inflection is made merely by attaching these endings to the stem **complē-**: **complēbō**, **complēbīs**, etc.

The perfect, **complēvī**, pluperfect, **complēvērām**, and future perfect, **complēvērō**, are inflected regularly, as are the same tenses in the passive: **complētūs sūm**, **ērām**, **ērō**.

The subjunctive mood is inflected regularly :

Active Voice; present, **compleām**, imperfect, **complērēm**, perfect, **complēvērīm**, pluperfect, **complēvissēm**.

Passive Voice; present, **compleār**, imperfect, **complērēr**, perfect, **complētūs sīm**, pluperfect, **complētūs essēm**.

c. Verb stems ending in **ā** add **v** to form the perfect and **t** to form the supine stem.

**āmō**, *I love*,      **āmāvī**,      **āmātūs**,      verb stem **āmā-**

The inflection is like that of stems in **ē**, except in the present subjunctive, which has the ending **ēm**, **ēs**, **ēt**, etc., instead of **ām**, **ās**, **āt**, etc.

**ā** of the stem disappears before **ō** or **ē**. It absorbs all other vowels.

### *Indicative Mood.*

#### PRESENT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	<b>āmō</b>	<b>āmāmūs</b>	<b>āmōr</b>	<b>āmāmūr</b>
2d    "	<b>āmās</b>	<b>āmātīs</b>	<b>āmārīs</b>	<b>āmāmīnī</b>
3d    "	<b>āmāt</b>	<b>āmant</b>	<b>āmātūr</b>	<b>āmantūr</b>

IMPERFECT.	
Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
ămăbăm, etc.	ămăbăr, etc.
FUTURE.	
ămăbō, etc.	ămăbōr, etc.
PERFECT.	
ămăvi	ămătūs sūm
PLUPERFECT.	
ămăvērām	ămătūs ērām
FUTURE PERFECT.	
ămăverō	ămătūs ērō

*Subjunctive Mood.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
1st person	ămēm	ămēmūs	ămēr
2d "	ămēs	ămētīs	ămērīs
3d "	ămēt	ăment	ămētūr

IMPERFECT.	
ămārēm	ămārēr
PERFECT.	
ămăvērīm	ămătūs sīm
PLUPERFECT.	
ămăvissēm	ămătūs essēm

## 83. LIST OF WORDS.

finiō, <i>I finish,</i>	finīvi,	finītūs,	verb stem finī-
pūniō, <i>I punish,</i>	pūnīvi,	pūnītūs,	" pūnī-
audiō, <i>I hear,</i>	audīvi	audītūs,	" audī-
fleō, <i>I weep,</i>	flēvi,	flētūs,	" flē-
dōnō, <i>I present,</i>	dōnāvi,	dōnātūs,	" dōnā-

libērō, <i>I free</i> ,	libērāvī,	libērātūs, verb stem libērā-	
nōmīnō, <i>I name</i> ,	nōmīnāvī,	nōmīnātūs, “	nōmīnā-
pugnō, <i>I fight</i> ,	pugnāvī,	pugnātūs, “	pugnā-
cōrōnō, <i>I crown</i> ,	cōrōnāvī,	cōrōnātūs, “	cōrōnā-
nūmērō, <i>I count</i> ,	nūmērāvī,	nūmērātūs, “	nūmērā-

There are very few verb stems in ē and not many in ī; but those in ā are very numerous.

### EXERCISES.

1. Puēri parvī flēbant. 2. Cānēm vīrgīnī dōnāvērunt.  
 3. Puellae mālae pūniēbantūr. 4. Consūl servōs mīserōs  
 libērāvērāt. 5. Mīlītēs fortēs pugnābunt. 6. Rāpīnā urbīs  
 finitā ērit. 7. Multi glādiātōrēs pugnāvērint. 8. Multi  
 leōnēs fēri nūmērātī ērant. 9. Rex rēginām cōrōnābīt.  
 10. Cōrōnās mīlītībūs dōnāt ūt pugnent.

1. I had named the consuls. 2. The slaves were  
 fighting in the city. 3. I heard the voice of the orator.  
 4. The king will free the white slaves. 5. The boy is  
 presented with a book.

### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

*Finish* and *punish* evidently have the stems **finī-** and **pūnī-**. The letters “sh” come from the French forms through which the words came into English.

The supine stems of ā verbs give us many words, — *donate* and *donation*, *liberate* and *liberation*, and the like.

**Audit-** is found in the verb *audit*, which means an *examination*, implying a *hearing* given to claimants of an account. The *auditory* nerves are the nerves of *hearing*.

# STUDY XXIV. — VERBS. STEMS IN A SHORT VOWEL. Ě, Ā.

84. Verb stems ending in a short vowel (ě, ā) form stems, and are inflected in general like stems in a long vowel.

A short vowel, however, is so easily lost or changed, that some apparent differences occur.

In the perfect stem the vowel is lost, and the stem suffix *v* becomes *ŭ*.

Verb stem *mŏně-*, perfect stem *mŏnŭ-* (for *mŏněv-*)

“ *sŏnǎ-*, “ *sŏnŭ-* (for *sŏnǎv-*)

In the supine stem the short vowel becomes *ī*.

Verb stem *mŏně-*, supine stem *mŏnī-* (for *mŏnět-*)

“ *sŏnǎ-*, “ *sŏnī-* (for *sŏnăt-*)

The inflection of stems in *ě* and *ā* is like that of stems in *ē* and *ā*.

## SYNOPSIS OF *Mŏneō*, *I advise*.

### *Indicative Mood.*

Active Voice.	PRESENT TENSE.	Passive Voice.
<i>mŏneō</i>		<i>mŏneōr</i>
	IMPERFECT.	
<i>mŏněbām</i>		<i>mŏněbār</i>
	FUTURE.	
<i>mŏněbō</i>		<i>mŏněbōr</i>
	PERFECT.	
<i>mŏnuī</i>		<i>mŏnitūs sūm</i>



PLUPERFECT.		
Active Voice.		Passive Voice.
mōnuērām		mōnītūs ērām
FUTURE PERFECT.		
mōnuērō		mōnītūs ērō
<i>Subjunctive Mood.</i>		
PRESENT.		
mōneām		mōneār
IMPERFECT.		
mōnērēm		mōnērēr
PERFECT.		
mōnuērīm		mōnītūs sīm
PLUPERFECT.		
mōnuissēm		mōnītūs essēm

SYNOPSIS OF **Sōnō**, *I sound*.*Indicative Mood.*

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.
PRESENT.		
sōnō		sōnōr
IMPERFECT.		
sōnābām		sōnābār
FUTURE.		
sōnābō		sōnābōr
PERFECT.		
sōnuī		sōnītūs sūm
PLUPERFECT.		
sōnuērām		sōnītūs ērām
FUTURE PERFECT.		
sōnuērō		sōnītūs ērō

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.	
Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
sōnēm	sōnēr
IMPERFECT.	
sōnārēm	sōnārēr
PERFECT.	
sōnuērīm	sōnītūs sīm
PLUPERFECT.	
sōnuissēm	sōnītūs essēm

## 85.

## LIST OF WORDS.

hābeō, <i>I have,</i>	hābui,	hābītūs,	verb stem	hābē-
plāceō, <i>I please,</i>	plācui,	plācītūs,	"	plācē-
tāceō, <i>I am silent,</i>	tācui,	tācītūs,	"	tācē-
mōneō, <i>I advise,</i>	mōnuī,	mōnītūs,	"	mōnē-
dōmō, <i>I tame,</i>	dōmui,	dōmītūs,	"	dōmā-
plicō, <i>I fold,</i>	plicui,	plicītūs,	"	plicā-
sōnō, <i>I sound,</i>	sōnui,	sōnītūs,	"	sōnā-
vētō, <i>I forbid,</i>	vētui,	vētītūs,	"	vētā-

## EXERCISES.

1. Māgister multōs discipulōs hābebāt. 2. Consulēs plēbēm mōnuērāt. 3. Ānimāliā fērā dōmītā sunt. 4. Tūbicinēs (*the trumpeters*) tūbās sōnuērunt. 5. Pāter lūdum vētābāt. 6. Multae rēs vētītae ērant. 7. Cārmīnā virginūm sōnābant. 8. Glādiātōr glādiūm frātris hābuērāt. 9. Leōnēm dōmābīt. 10. Fēmīnā tācēt.

1. We sound the trumpets. 2. The soldiers will tame the wild animals. 3. The master forbade the sport. 4. The orator folded his toga. 5. Hunger is not pleasing.

## REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

**Vĕtō** is itself used as an English word; the President's *veto* power being his power of *forbidding*.

The supine stems are seen in various words.

*Habit* is a tendency to certain acts, — a tendency which one *has* as a settled thing.

*Tacit* consent is *silent* consent.

*Admonition* is *advice*.

An *explicit* statement is one which is fully *unfolded* (literally, *folded out*), so as to be plain.

*Indomitable* energy is *untamable* (the prefix *in-* has a negative sense).

*Please* comes from the stem **plācē-**, through the French.



## STUDY XXV. — VERBS. PRESENT STEMS.

**86.** In the verbs thus far studied, the verb stem is used also as a present stem. But in many verbs this is not the case, the present stem, as well as the perfect and supine, being made by some change in the verb stem.

The following are examples :

Verb stem	<b>gĕn-</b>	Present stem	<b>gĭg(ĕ)n-</b> , (= <b>gign-</b> )
"	<b>dŭc-</b>	"	<b>dŭc-</b>
"	<b>rŭp-</b>	"	<b>rump-</b>
"	<b>cŭb-</b>	"	<b>cumb-</b>
"	<b>vĭc-</b>	"	<b>vinc-</b>
"	<b>frāg-</b>	"	<b>frang-</b>

Verb stem	fūd-,	Present stem	fund-
"	tēm-,	"	temn-
"	crē-,	"	cresc-
"	gēs-,	"	gēr-
"	cāp-,	"	cāpī-
"	sanc-,	"	sancī-
"	vīd-,	"	vīdē-
"	jūv-,	"	jūvā-

An examination of these examples will show that there are three general ways in which the change is made: (1) By a prefix. (2) By a change in the body of the verb stem. (3) By a suffix.

1. The only prefix used is the *reduplication*. This consists of the initial consonant followed by *i* or *ě*. Thus *gěn-* gives *gīgěn-* (the *ě* being dropped for convenience of enunciation).

2. The change in the body of the stem may consist in the lengthening of a vowel. Thus *ďuc* gives *ďūc-*. It frequently consists in the insertion of a nasal (*m* before a labial, otherwise *n*). Thus *rŭp-*, *cŭb-*, *vīc-*, *frāg-*, *fūd-*, yield the present stems *rump-*, *cumb-*, *vīnc-*, *frang-*, *fund-*. Sometimes the stem vowel and the final consonant change places: *sper-* becomes *sprē-*.

3. The suffix may be *n*. Thus from *tēm* comes *temn-*. The suffix may be *-sc-*. Thus from *crē* comes *cresc-*. The suffix may be *t*. Thus *plēc-* gives *plect-*. The suffix may be a vowel, as in the last four examples, *cāpī-*, *sancī-*, *vīdē-*, *jūvā-*.

The stem *gēs-* changes to *gēr-* merely because in the inflection of the present stem *s* would always come between two vowels (38).

## 87.

## LIST OF WORDS.

dūcō, <i>I lead,</i>	dūxi,	ductūs,	verb stem dūc-
rumpō, <i>I burst,</i>	rūpi,	ruptūs,	" rūp-
vincō, <i>I conquer,</i>	vici,	victūs,	" vic-
frangō, <i>I break,</i>	frēgi,	fractūs,	" frag-
fundō, <i>I pour,</i>	fūdi,	fūsūs (=fudsūs),	" fūd-
crescō, <i>I increase,</i>	crēvi,	crētūs,	" crē-
gērō, <i>I wage,</i>	gessi,	gestūs,	" gēs-
cāpiō, <i>I take,</i>	cēpi,	captūs,	" cāp-
sanciō, <i>I make sacred,</i>	saxi,	sanctūs,	" sanc-
videō, <i>I see,</i>	vīdi,	vīsūs (=vidsūs),	" vīd-
jūvō, <i>I aid,</i>	jūvi,	jūtūs (=juvtūs),	" jūv-
spērō, <i>I despise,</i>	sprēvi,	sprētūs,	" spēr-, sprē- (86)
plectō, <i>I braid,</i>	plexi (=plecsi=plectsi),	plectūs,	" plēc-
discō, <i>I learn,</i>	didici,	—,	" dīc-

Some verbs seem to have two or more verb stems.

gignō (=gigēnō), <i>I beget</i> ,	gēnītūs,	“	gēn-, gēnē-
cumbō, <i>I recline</i> ,	cūbītūs,	“	cūb-, cūbē-
fūgiō, <i>I flee</i> ,	fūgītūs,	“	fūg-, fugē-
ālō, <i>I nourish</i> ,	ālītūs,	“	āl-, ālē-
pōnō, <i>I place</i> ,	pōsītūs,	“	pōs-
tangō, <i>I touch</i> ,	tētīgī,	“	tāg-
faciō, <i>I make, I do</i> ,	fēci,	“	fāc-
jaciō, <i>I throw</i> ,	jēci,	“	jāc-
relinquō, <i>I leave</i> ,	relliqui,	“	relliq- (q = c before t)
fodiō, <i>I dig</i> ,	fōdi,	“	fōd-
fidiō, <i>I part</i> ,	fīdi,	“	fīd-
rāpiō, <i>I seize</i> ,	rāpūt,	“	rāp-
quiescō, <i>I rest</i> ,	quīēvī,	“	quē-
scindō, <i>I cut</i> ,	scīdi,	“	scīd-

88. Present stems in **I** are inflected with the same endings and connecting vowels as consonant stems (46). The stem vowel is lost before **ē** or **I**.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT TENSE.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st person	cāpiō	cāpimūs	cāpiōr	cāpimūr
2d    "	cāpis	cāpitīs	cāpēris	cāpimīni
3d    "	cāpit	cāpiunt	cāpitūr	cāpiuntur

IMPERFECT TENSE.

cāpiēbām	cāpiēbār
----------	----------

FUTURE TENSE.

cāpiām	cāpiār
cāpiēs, etc.	cāpiēris, etc.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT TENSE.

cāpiām	cāpiār
--------	--------

IMPERFECT TENSE.

cāpērēm	cāpērēr
---------	---------

EXERCISES.

1. Pontēs longī ā hostībūs rumpēbantūr. 2. Rīvī āquām īn mārē fūdērunt. 3. Milītēs Rōmānī ā Gallīs nōn victī ērant. 4. Caesār bellū īn Galliā gērēbāt. 5. Rex ūt urbs cāpērētūr pugnābāt. 6. Discīpūlūs multās rēs discēt. 7. Virgīnēs ā bārbāris raptae ērant. 8. Ex urbē fūgiēbant. 9. Lūdōs puērōrūm nōn spernīt. 10. Puellā hortūm pulchrūm nōn vīdēt.

1. The slave has burst his chains. 2. The leader of the barbarians was waging war in Italy. 3. Does the master flee from (ǣb) the slaves? 4. All the boys saw the moon in the sky. 5. The maid was growing in stature.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

Some of these present stems become English words directly. *Convince* is to *conquer* in opinion; *con* being intensive in force. *Infringe* is to *break* into (*in*); the change of the radical vowel from ǣ to i being caused by the prefix, as will be explained later (110).

Our word *spurn* has the same meaning as *spurn*. However, this is one of the common instances in which the English word does not come from the Latin, but both are from the same root in the older common tongue from which both Latin and English are derived.

As usual, the derivatives from the supine stems are quite numerous.

A *duct* is a device for *leading* or *drawing* a liquid. To *rupture* is to *burst*, to *fracture* is to *break*, to *capture* is to *take*.

*Vision* is *seeing*, a *fugitive* is one who *flees*, *scissors* are an implement for *cutting*.

Of course, metaphorical meanings are common. *Tact* is the ability to give just the right *touch* to people's feelings. A *fact* is something which has actually been *done*. A *relict* is a widow, — a woman who has been *left* in this life by her husband's death. *Rapture* is the condition of one who has been *taken possession of*, *seized*, by delight.



# STUDY XXVI. — VERBS. IMPERATIVE MOOD. ADJECTIVE FORMS.

89. The imperative mood in Latin, as in English, is used to express a command, an exhortation, or an entreaty.

But unlike the English the Latin imperative has two tenses — the present and the future.

The present imperative has but one person, the second.

The future imperative has a form for the third person, as well as for the second.

The imperative endings are as follows:

PRESENT TENSE.				
Active Voice.		Passive Voice.		
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
2d person	-ĕ	-itĕ	-ĕrĕ	-imīnī
FUTURE TENSE.				
2d person	} -itō	-itōtĕ	-itōr	{ — -untōr
3d " }		-untō		

Consonant and *u* stems are inflected in the imperative merely by attaching the above endings to the present stem.

*carpō, I pluck* ; present stem *carp-*.

*Imperative Mood.*

PRESENT TENSE.		
Active Voice.		
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
2d person	<i>carpĕ, pluck them</i>	<i>carpĭtĕ, pluck ye</i>

## Passive Voice.

Sing.

Plur.

2d person **carpĕrĕ**, *be thou plucked*    **carpĭmĭni**, *be ye plucked*

## FUTURE TENSE.

## Active Voice.

Sing.

Plur.

2d pers. }	<b>carpĭtō</b>	{ <i>thou shalt pluck</i>	<b>carpĭtōtĕ</b> , <i>ye shall pluck</i>
3d " }		{ <i>he shall pluck</i>	<b>carpuntō</b> , <i>they "</i>

## Passive Voice.

Sing.

Plur.

2d pers. }	<b>carpĭtōr</b>	{ <i>thou shalt be plucked</i>	—
3d " }		{ <i>he shall "</i>	<b>carpuntōr</b> , <i>they shall be plucked</i>

Present stems in **ī** lose the **ī** before **ĕ** or **ī** of the ending.

**căpiō**, *I take*; present stem **căpi-**.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Active.

Passive.

**căpĕ****căpiĕ****căpĕrĕ****capĭmĭni**

## FUTURE TENSE.

<b>capĭtō</b>	<b>căpiĭtōtĕ</b>	<b>căpiuntō</b>	<b>căpiĭtōr</b>	<b>căpiuntōr</b>
---------------	------------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------------

Present stems in **ī** absorb **ĕ** or **ī** of the ending (compare 82).

**audiō**, *I hear*; present stem **audi-**.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Active.

Passive.

**audi****audĭĕ****audĭrĕ****audĭmĭni**

## FUTURE TENSE.

<b>audĭtō</b>	<b>audĭtōtĕ</b>	<b>audiuntō</b>	<b>audĭtōr</b>	<b>audiuntōr</b>
---------------	-----------------	-----------------	----------------	------------------

Present stems in **e** (both **ē** and **ě**) absorb the connecting vowel of the ending (compare 82).

**mōneō**, *I advise*; present stem **mōnē-**.

PRESENT TENSE.			
Active.		Passive.	
<b>mōnē</b>	<b>mōnētē</b>	<b>mōnērē</b>	<b>mōnēmīni</b>
FUTURE TENSE.			
<b>mōnētō</b>	<b>mōnētōtē</b>	<b>mōnentō</b>	<b>mōnētōr</b> <b>mōnentōr</b>

Present stems in **a** (both **ā** and **ă**) absorb the connecting vowel of the ending (compare 82).

**āmō**, *I love*; present stem **āmā-**.

PRESENT TENSE.			
Active.		Passive.	
<b>āmā</b>	<b>āmātē</b>	<b>āmārē</b>	<b>amāmīni</b>
FUTURE TENSE.			
<b>āmātō</b>	<b>āmātōtē</b>	<b>āmantō</b>	<b>āmātōr</b> <b>āmantōr</b>

90. Besides the three moods (indicative, subjunctive, imperative) a Latin verb has other forms which have the meaning of the verb, but the use in a sentence of a noun or adjective.

91. The forms which have the use of an adjective are called PARTICIPLES. **Militēs vēnientēs vidī**, *I saw the soldiers coming*. In this sentence **vēnientēs** is inflected like an adjective, and has the same gender, number, and case as **militēs**, to which it belongs.

A Latin verb has two participles in the active,—

the present and future ; and two in the passive, — the gerundive and perfect.

1. The present active participle has the same meaning as the English participle in *-ing*: **vĕnientēs**, *coming*.

As the participle has the use of an adjective, it is inflected like an adjective, so as to agree with its noun in gender, number, and case.

The stem of the present participle is formed by attaching to the present stem of the verb the suffix **-ent-**.

The connecting vowel **e** is absorbed by the stem vowel **e** or **a**.

Participle stems in **-nt-** are inflected like adjective consonant stems (42). Thus **vĕnient** is inflected **vĕniens**, **vĕnientis**, **vĕnienti**, etc.

	Pres. Stem.	Pres. Part.	Stem.
<b>carpō</b> , <i>I pluck</i>	<b>carp-</b>	<b>carpens</b>	<b>carpent-</b>

All consonant and **u** present stems form the present participle like **carpō**.

	Pres. Stem.	Pres. Part.	Stem.
<b>cāpiō</b> , <i>I take</i>	<b>cāpī-</b>	<b>cāpiens</b> , <i>taking</i>	<b>cāpient-</b>
<b>audiō</b> , <i>I hear</i>	<b>audī-</b>	<b>audiens</b> , <i>hearing</i>	<b>audient-</b>
<b>mōneō</b> , <i>I advise</i>	<b>mōnē-</b>	<b>mōnens</b> , <i>advising</i>	<b>mōnent-</b>
<b>āmō</b> , <i>I love</i>	<b>āmā-</b>	<b>āmans</b> , <i>loving</i>	<b>āmant-</b>

2. The future active participle is unlike any English form. **carptūrūs** is translated *about to pluck*.

The stem is formed by attaching to the supine stem of the verb the suffix **-ūrō-** (**-ūrā-**). The inflection is

like that of adjective stems in *o* (a) (69). Thus *carp-tūrūs* is inflected:

N.	<i>carptūrūs</i> ,	} ūm, ā
Voc.	<i>carptūrē</i> ,	
Ac.	<i>carptūrū</i> ,	ām
G.	<i>carptūrī</i> ,	ae
D.	} <i>carptūrō</i> ,	{ ae
Ab.		

and the plural in regular order.

	Supine Stem.	Future Part.	Stem.
<i>carpō</i> , <i>I pluck</i>	<i>carpt-</i>	<i>carptūrūs</i>	<i>carptūrō-</i>

All verbs form the future participle in like manner.

3. The perfect passive participle has the same meaning as the English passive participle in *-ed*: *carptūs*, *plucked*.

The stem is formed by attaching to the supine stem of the verb the suffix *-ō* (*-ā*). The inflection is like that of adjective stems in *-ō* (*-ā*) (69).

	Supine Stem.	Perfect Part.
<i>carpō</i> , <i>I pluck</i>	<i>carpt-</i>	<i>carptūs</i>

All verbs form the perfect participle in like manner. Hence if we know the perfect participle of a verb, by merely dropping the case ending the supine stem is found.

4. The gerundive passive participle is unlike any English form. It may be translated by the passive infinitive: *āmandūs* est, he is *to be loved*.

The stem is formed by attaching to the present stem of the verb the suffix *-endō* (*-ā*). The inflection is like that of adjectives with stem in *-ō* (*-ā*) (69).

The connecting vowel *e* is absorbed by the stem vowel *e* or *a*.

	Pres. Stem.	Gerundive.	Stem.
carpō	carp-	carpendūs, ūm, ā	carpendō- (ā-)
audiō	audi-	audiendūs, " "	audiendō- (ā-)
mōneō	mōnē-	mōnendūs, " "	mōnendō- (ā-)
āmō	āmā-	āmandūs, " "	āmandō- (ā-)

## EXERCISES.

1. Servē, vēnī. 2. Servi, vēnitē. 3. Āmīci, omnēs āmātē.  
 4. Āmicōs mōnētē. 5. Āvis plūmās carpē. 6. Oānēm cur-  
 rentēm vidī. 7. Puellā āmātā vēnit. 8. Ēpistolā scribendā  
 est. 9. Puēr ēpistolām scriptūrā est. 10. Discipulis ēpis-  
 tolām scribītō.

1. Friends, walk towards the city. 2. The water is  
 to be poured. 3. The written letter remains. 4. The  
 maids are about to hear a song. 5. The dog came  
 barking.

## REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

Occasionally a Latin imperative is used as an Eng-  
 lish word: *query* = *quaerē*, *seek*; *recipe* = *rēcīpē*, *take*  
*(i.e. take medicine or food, and hence something to take,*  
*a recipe).*

Derivatives from present participle stems are very  
 numerous.

*Extant* is merely a badly spelled form of *exstant*,  
*standing out, hence remaining.*

*Infant* means *not speaking*, from *in* (negative) and  
*fant*, participle from the stem *fā-*, which means *speak*.  
 An infant, in the eye of the law, is one who cannot  
 legally *speak* for himself, — one who has to have some  
 legal guardian; *i.e.* in this country, one who is under  
 twenty-one years of age.

A *student* is one *studying* (**stūdeō**, *I study*); i.e. one who studies.

*Omniscient* is *knowing everything*, from the present stem **sci-**, *know*, and the adjective stem **omni-**, *everything*.

*Crescent* means *increasing*, from the stem **cresc-**, *increase*. The term is applied to the moon when its first faint rim of light begins to *increase*; hence to anything of that shape.

An *agent* is one who *acts* for another. The stem is **ag-**, *act* or *do*.

A *rodent* is a *gnawing* (**rōdō**, *I gnaw*) animal, like a mouse.



## STUDY XXVII. — VERBS. NOUN FORMS.

92. The forms from a Latin verb which have the use of a noun are the infinitive, the gerund, and the supine.

The infinitive has the same meaning in Latin as in English, and is translated with "to": **carpĕrĕ**, *to pluck*.

As to its use in a sentence, the infinitive is a noun in the nominative or the accusative. It is usually the subject or the object of a verb, or in apposition with a subject or object: **vidĕrĕ bonū est**, *to see is good*; **puĕr dicĕrĕ cūpīt**, *the boy desires to speak*.

As a noun an infinitive is considered to be of the neuter gender and singular number. Hence, an adjective belonging to it, like **bonū** in the first example above, is of that gender and number.

If the subject of an infinitive is expressed, it is put in the accusative case: **consulēm sapiētem essē pūtō**, *I consider the consul to be wise*. A more frequent translation is a subordinate clause introduced by "that" — *I consider that the consul is wise*.

**93.** The Latin infinitive has two tense forms, the present and perfect, and each is found in both voices.

The endings are as follows:

	Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
Present	-ērē-	-ērī or -ī
Perfect	-issē-	-tūs essē

Stems in **ā**, **ē**, or **ī** take the ending **-ērī** in the present passive. Other stems take **ī**.

The connecting vowel **ē** of the present in both voices is absorbed by **ā**, **ē**, or **ī**. **ī** is lost before it.

### EXAMPLES.

#### Infinitives.

<b>carpō</b> :	active	<b>carpērē</b> , to pluck	<b>carpissē</b> , to have plucked
	passive	<b>carpī</b> , to be plucked	<b>carptūs essē</b> , to have been plucked
<b>stātuō</b> :	active	<b>stātuērē</b> , to place	<b>stātuissē</b>
	passive	<b>stātui</b>	<b>stātūtūs essē</b>
<b>cāpiō</b> :	active	<b>capērē</b> , to take	<b>cēpissē</b>
	passive	<b>cāpi</b>	<b>captūs essē</b>
<b>audiō</b> :	active	<b>audīrē</b> , to hear	<b>audīvissē</b>
	passive	<b>audīri</b>	<b>audītūs essē</b>
<b>mōneō</b> :	active	<b>mōnērē</b> , to warn	<b>mōnuissē</b>
	passive	<b>mōnēri</b>	<b>mōnītūs essē</b>
<b>āmō</b> :	active	<b>āmārē</b> , to love	<b>āmāvissē</b>
	passive	<b>āmāri</b>	<b>āmātūs essē</b>

From the present indicative and the present infinitive together we may learn the present stem of a verb.



We could not get this from the indicative alone. **carpō** might have a stem **carp-** or **carpā-**, **statuō** might have **statū-** or **statuā-**, **āmō** might have **ām-** or **āmā-**. And one could not tell from the forms **cāpiō** or **audiō** alone which has the stem in **i** and which in **ī**. The infinitive at once shows which it is.

The infinitive alone would not always help one. **carpēre** might be from a stem **carpi-** and **cāpēre** from a stem **cāp-**. Here the indicative settles the question.

In order to inflect a Latin verb, it is obvious that one needs to know the three stems. As has just been explained, the present indicative and the present infinitive together will give the present stem. The perfect indicative active will always give the perfect stem. And the perfect participle will always give the supine stem.

These four forms are called the **PRINCIPAL PARTS** of a Latin verb. Hereafter they will be given, the student being left to find the stems from them.

The verb stem, from which the three inflective stems are formed, may usually be seen quite readily if one has the latter.

**94.** The gerund is a verbal noun, translated by the English verbal (or participial) noun in *-ing*: **carpendūm**, *plucking*.

The stem of the gerund is formed by attaching the ending **-endō-** to the present stem of the verb.

The stem is inflected only in the singular number, and is never found in the nominative.

The connecting vowel **ē** of this ending is absorbed by the stem vowel **ē** or **ā** of the present stem.

**carpō**: present stem **carp-**, gerund stem **carpendō-**

inflection, Ac. **carpendūm**, *plucking*

“ G. **carpendī**, *of plucking*

“ D. } **carpendō**, *to or with plucking*

“ Ab.

<b>audiō</b> :	present stem <b>audi-</b> , gerund stem <b>audiendō-</b>
	inflection, Ac. <b>audiendūm</b>
	“ G. <b>audiendī</b>
	“ D. } <b>audiendō</b>
	“ Ab. }
<b>mōneō</b> :	present stem <b>monē-</b> , gerund stem <b>monendō-</b>
	inflection, Ac. <b>mōnendūm</b>
	“ G. <b>mōnendī</b>
	“ D. } <b>mōnendō</b>
	“ Ab. }
<b>āmō</b> :	present stem <b>amā-</b> , gerund stem <b>āmandō-</b>
	inflection, Ac. <b>āmandūm</b>
	“ G. <b>āmandī</b>
	“ D. } <b>āmandō</b>
	“ Ab. }

**95.** The supine is a verbal noun, translated by the English infinitive : **carptūm**, *to pluck*.

The supine has only two cases, the accusative and ablative singular, with stem ending in **u**.

**carpō** : supine stem **carptū-** { Ac. **carptūm**, *to pluck*  
Ab. **carptū**, *to be plucked*

It will be noticed that the supine is translated by the infinitive. A Latin infinitive never expresses *purpose*. *He came to seek peace* might be expressed in Latin **pācē m pētītū m vē- nīt**. The ablative form of the supine is generally used with an adjective : **optīmū m factū est**, *it is best to be done*, or *it is the best thing to do*.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Scribām ēpistolām scribēre pūtāvīt.
2. Scribām ēpistolām scripsissē pūtāt.
3. Nuntiūs hostēm supērāvissē narrāvīt.
4. Māgister puērū m ēpistolām scriptūrū m essē pūtābāt.
5. Puērū m laudātū m essē dicit.
6. In ambulandō cōgitant.
7. Persēverandō vincimūs, dōcendō discimūs.
8. Oūpidō

scribendī puellām cēpīt. 9. Lūdōs spectātūm vēnērunt.  
10. Ōrātiō jūcundā auditū est.

1. I thought that the boy was writing (= I thought the boy to write). 2. I thought that the girl had written the letter. 3. Desire of seeing the games seized all. 4. He came to see the games. 5. The letter is pleasant to read.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

English words from the supine stem of verbs are very numerous.

Some of them are nouns: *manuscript*, something written by the hand; *act*, something done; *fact*, something made, brought to pass.

Some of them are adjectives: *tacit*, silent; *infinite*, not bounded; *nondescript*, literally not written down, i.e. not in any list, hence presumably odd.

Most of them are verbs: *nominate*, from *nōmīnō*, I name; *navigate*, from *nāvīgō*, I sail; *educate*, from *ēdūcō*, I bring up; *iterate*, from *itērō*, I repeat; *tolerate*, from *tōlērō*, I endure; *promote*, from *prōmōveō*, I move forward.

---

#### STUDY XXVIII. — VERBS. DEPONENTS AND OLD FORMS.

96. Some verbs have only an active meaning, but have no forms of inflection for the moods in the active voice: *sēquor*, I follow; *sēquēbār*, I was following.

These verbs are called *deponents*. The infinitive active is not used, but the other noun and adjective forms of both voices are found.

SYNOPSIS OF **Sēquōr**, *I follow*; verb stem **sēqu-** (**sēcū-**).

*Principal Parts.*

Present indicative **sēquōr**, *I follow*

“ infinitive **sēquī**, *to follow*

Perfect participle **sēcūtūs**, *having followed*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMP.	PARTICIPLES.	INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	SUPINE.
Present	<b>sēquōr</b>	<b>sēquār</b>	<b>sēquere</b>	{ <b>sēquens</b> <b>sēquendūs</b>	<b>sēqui</b>	<b>sēquendūm</b>	
Imperfect	<b>sēquēbār</b>	<b>sēquērēr</b>					
Future	<b>sēquār</b>			<b>sēcūtūrūs</b>	<b>sēcūtūrūs</b>	<b>essē</b>	{ <b>sēcūtūm</b> <b>sēcūtū</b>
Perfect	<b>sēcūtūs sūm</b>	<b>sēcūtūs sīm</b>		<b>sēcūtūs</b>	<b>sēcūtūs</b>	<b>essē</b>	
Pluperf.	<b>sēcūtūs ērām</b>	<b>sēcūtūs essēm</b>					
Fut. Perf.	<b>sēcūtūs ērō</b>						

## 97.

## LIST OF DEPONENTS.

<i>fruōr</i>	<i>frui</i>	<i>fructūs</i>	<i>enjoy</i>
<i>fungōr</i>	<i>fungi</i>	<i>functūs</i>	<i>perform</i>
<i>grādiōr</i>	<i>grādī</i>	<i>gressūs</i>	<i>walk</i>
<i>lābōr</i>	<i>lābi</i>	<i>lapsūs</i>	<i>fall</i>
<i>lōquōr</i>	<i>lōqui</i>	<i>lōcūtūs</i>	<i>talk</i>
<i>mōriōr</i>	<i>mōri</i>	<i>mortuūs</i>	<i>die</i>
<i>nascōr</i>	<i>nascī</i>	<i>nātūs</i>	<i>be born</i>
<i>oblīvīscōr</i>	<i>oblīvīscī</i>	<i>oblītūs</i>	<i>forget</i>
<i>pāciōr</i>	<i>pāciō</i>	<i>pactūs</i>	<i>bargain</i>
<i>pātiōr</i>	<i>pāti</i>	<i>passūs</i>	<i>suffer</i>
<i>rēmīniscōr</i>	—	—	<i>remember</i>
<i>ūtōr</i>	<i>ūtī</i>	<i>ūsūs</i>	<i>use</i>
<i>expēriōr</i>	<i>expērī</i>	<i>expertūs</i>	<i>try</i>
<i>mētiōr</i>	<i>mētī</i>	<i>mensūs</i>	<i>measure</i>
<i>mēreōr</i>	<i>mērē</i>	<i>mērītūs</i>	<i>deserve</i>
<i>hortōr</i>	<i>hortārī</i>	<i>hortātūs</i>	<i>exhort</i>
<i>mīrōr</i>	<i>mīrārī</i>	<i>mīrātūs</i>	<i>admire</i>

98. Some verbs are deponent only in the tenses formed from the perfect stem. These are called semi-deponents.

## LIST OF SEMI-DEPONENTS.

<i>audeō</i>	<i>audērē</i>	<i>ausūs</i>	<i>dare</i>
<i>gaudeō</i>	<i>gaudērē</i>	<i>gāvīsūs</i>	<i>rejoice</i>
<i>sōleō</i>	<i>sōlērē</i>	<i>sōlītūs</i>	<i>be accustomed</i>
<i>fidō</i>	<i>fidērē</i>	<i>fīsūs</i>	<i>trust</i>

## 99.

THE VERB *sūm*, *I am*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD. NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

The verb *sūm*, *I am*, has been inflected in the indicative and subjunctive moods. The remaining forms are as follows:

*Imperative.*

## PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
2d person	ēs	estē

## FUTURE.

2d person	estō	estōtē
3d "	estō	suntō

*Participle.*

## PRESENT.

(Formed only in compounds. The stem is -ent-, Nom. ens.)

## FUTURE.

fūtūrūs

1. It will be noticed that the inflection of *sūm* differs in some particulars from that of other verbs. That is doubtless for the reason that *sūm* is much more ancient than other verbs, and keeps the very old forms of inflection.

In these old forms, the only connecting vowel in the present indicative was *ū*, used before a nasal (*m, n*).

The present stem is *ēs-* (compare the English *is*). In the present tense the radical vowel *ē* was dropped whenever a connecting vowel was used. Hence the indicative forms are readily explained :

<i>s-ū-m</i>	<i>s-ū-mūs</i>
<i>ēs-</i>	<i>es- tīs</i>
<i>es- t</i>	<i>s-u-nt</i>

In the present subjunctive the old connecting vowel was *i*. Hence the forms of *sūm* are (the radical vowel dropped, as above) :

<i>s-i-m</i>	<i>s-i-mūs</i>
<i>s-i-s</i>	<i>s-i-tīs</i>
<i>s-i-t</i>	<i>s-i-nt</i>



The present imperative follows the same principles as the present indicative — using no connecting vowel except before a nasal, and dropping the radical *ě* when a connecting vowel is used. The forms are :

<b>ěs</b>	<b>es-tě</b>
<b>ěs-tō</b>	<b>es-tōtě</b>
<b>ěs-tō</b>	<b>s-u-ntō</b>

The ending of the present infinitive is *rě*. After the stem *ěs*-, *r* of this ending is assimilated. Hence the form *es-sě*.

In the imperfect indicative the connecting vowel *a* was used. That brought *s* of the stem between two vowels, causing the change to *r* (39). Hence the forms :

<b>ěr-ă-m</b>	<b>ěr-ă-mŭs</b>
<b>ěr-ă-s</b>	<b>ěr-ă-tŭs</b>
<b>ěr-ă-t</b>	<b>ěr-a-nt</b>

In the imperfect subjunctive the characteristic is *-re-*, prefixed to the personal endings. This *r* is then assimilated to the preceding *s* of the stem.

<b>es-sě-m</b>	<b>es-sě-mŭs</b>
<b>es-sě-s</b>	<b>es-sě-tŭs</b>
<b>es-sě-t</b>	<b>es-se-nt</b>

In the future indicative the same connecting vowels are used which afterwards were given to the present indicative (46). Of course the radical vowel was retained throughout, *s* becoming *r* between two vowels.

<b>ěr-ō</b>	<b>ěr-ī-mŭs</b>
<b>ěr-ī-s</b>	<b>ěr-ī-tŭs</b>
<b>ěr-ī-t</b>	<b>ěr-u-nt</b>

The perfect and supine stems are from a totally different verb stem, *fŭ-*. The tenses formed from them are inflected like those of other verbs.

2. There is a compound of *sŭm*, *possŭm*, *I am able*, which is compounded of *pōt-*, the stem of an adjective (*pōtŭs*, *able*),

and **sūm**. Wherever the radical vowel of **ša-** is dropped, the **t** of **pōt-** is assimilated to the following **s**. Hence the inflection is, in the present indicative, **possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūmūs, pōtestīs, possunt**. The present subjunctive is **possīm, possīs**, etc. The other tenses, **pōtērām, pōtērō**, in the indicative, have no change. The imperfect subjunctive **possēm**, and the present infinitive **possē**, show the assimilation of **t** to **s**.

In the tenses formed from the perfect stem, **f** in **fū-** disappears after **t**: **pōtuī, pōtuērām**, etc.

3. **fērō, I bear**, stem **fēr-**, is another verb which shows traces of the old form of inflection without a connecting vowel before **r, s, t**. In the present indicative the first person uses the same vowels as other consonant stems. Thus the inflection of that tense in the active is **fērō, fer-s, fer-t, fērimus, fert-īs, fērint**; in the passive, **fērōr-, fer-rīs, fer-tūr, fērimūr, fērimīnī, fērintūr**. The imperative active is: present, **fēr, fer-tē**; future, **fer-tē, fer-tō, fer-tōtē, fērintō**. And the passive: present, **fer-rē, fērimīnī**; future, **fer-tōr, fer-tōr, fer-untōr**. The present imperative active is **ferrē**, and the passive **fer-rī**.

Like **sūm, fērō** uses a stem from an entirely distinct root as a perfect stem — **tūl-**. The perfect is **tūlī**, etc.

The supine stem is from a third root — **lāt-**. In point of fact these three stems happen to have the same meaning, and so are joined in inflection. The principal parts are **fērō, ferrē, tūlī, lātūs**. Several verbs form the principal parts in this way from different roots. For convenience we call these the parts of one and the same verb. Of course **fērō, tūlī, lātūs**, are really quite different words, rather than different forms of the same word (as is the case with **carpō, carpsī, carptūs**).

4. **vōlō, I am willing**, and its compounds **nōlō** and **mālō**, also retain traces of the older form of inflection.

The stem of **vōlō** is **vōl-**, the radical vowel also appearing as **ē** and **ū**.

In the present indicative the inflection is **vōlō, vīs, vult, vōlūmūs, vultīs, vōlunt**. The radical vowel is weakened to **ū** when the connecting vowel is omitted, though in older Latin



**volt** and **voltis** occur. The second person singular is contracted — doubtless merely by haste or carelessness of enunciation — **vis** being for **vōlis**. The present subjunctive is **vēlīm** (inflected like **sīm**), and the imperfect **vellēm** (like **essēm**). The present infinitive is **vellē** (for **vel-rē**, the **r** being assimilated).

The perfect stem is **vōlū-**. As there is, of course, no passive voice, there is no supine stem.

**nōlō**, *I am not willing* (*I am unwilling*), is a compound of **nōn** and **vōlō**. It is inflected in general as a consonant stem, **nōl-**. The present indicative is **nōlō**, **nōn vis**, **nōn vult**, **nōlūmus**, **nōn vultis**, **nōlunt**.

The present subjunctive is **nōlīm** (like **sīm**) and the imperfect **nollēm** (like **essēm**). There is an imperative **nōli**, etc., like stems in **i**. The present infinitive is **nollē** (like **essē**).

The present indicative of **mālō**, *I prefer* (compounded of **māgis**, *rather*, and **vōlō**), is **mālō**, **māvīs**, **māvult**, **mālūmus**, **māvultis**, **mālunt**. The present subjunctive is **mālīm**, etc., and the imperfect **mallēm**. The present infinitive is **mallē**.

5. **fiō**, *I become* (*I am made*), is commonly used as the passive of **fāciō**, *I make*, in the tenses formed from the present stem. It is inflected with the present stem in **i**, and with active endings almost everywhere. In the imperfect subjunctive and present infinitive the stem is in **i**.

The present indicative is **fiō**, **fiis**, **fit**, etc. The imperfect subjunctive is **fiērēm**, and the present infinitive **fiērī** (with the passive ending).

**fiō** has the three tenses of the indicative, the two in the subjunctive, the present imperative, and the present infinitive. All the rest of the passive inflection of **fāciō** is from the stems of that verb: gerundive **fāciendūs**, perfect participle **factūs**, etc.

6. **eō**, *I go*, has for the verb stem simply **i**. It is inflected in general like **i** stems. The present indicative is **eō**, **is**, **it**, **imūs**, **itīs**, **eunt**. The imperfect indicative is **ibām**, and the future **ibō**. The present subjunctive is **eām**, and the imperfect **irēm**. The imperative is **i**, etc., the infinitive present **irē**, the present

participle *iens* (Ac. *euntēm*), the gerund *eundū*. The tenses formed from the perfect stem (*iv*) are exactly like those of *audiō*, as is the case with the supine stem *it-* (with short vowel).

7. These verbs are sometimes called *irregular*. They are more properly merely quite early forms of inflection which were retained.

#### EXERCISES.

1. *Exercitū* in *Galliā* *sēquēbātūr*. 2. *Lōqūi* *mālēbāt*.  
 3. *Puērū* *ād urbē* *irē hortābār*. 4. *Sālūtē* *vellē nōn ausūs sūm*. 5. *Tēlū* in *hūmērō fert*. 6. *Puellā māgistrū* *audirē nōn vult*. 7. *Pātēr it sēd frātēr vēnit*. 8. *Discipūlūs lābōrāvīt ūt sāpiens essēt*. 9. *Sāpiens fiēbām sēd sōrōr sāpientiōr factā est*. 10. *Vōlō ūt sāpiens essē mālm*.

1. The boys preferred to go. 2. The soldiers were following the leader. 3. The slaves were carried to the river. 4. The queen had wished to be happy. 5. All men wish to be immortal.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

From the deponents (97) we have various derivatives, in no way differing in meaning from those which come from other verbs. A *function* is something to *perform*. A *lapse* is a *fall*, *eloquence* is *speaking out*, *nativity* and *use* at once suggest *nātūs* and *ūsūs*. A *pact* or *compact* is a *bargain*; an *expert* is one who has been *tried*: *i.e.* has had *experience*. *Passion* is *suffering*: *e.g.* the *passion* of Our Lord was his suffering in the garden; in the sense of *anger*, *passion* has a secondary meaning, — from suffering it came to be applied to any strong feeling, and so to *anger*. One's *merits* are what one

*deserves.* *Admiration* and *exhortation* are plainly from the stems **mirāt-** and **hortāt-**, with prefixes.

The stem of **fütūrūs** gives us *future*.

From the stem of **völō** we have *volunteer* and *voluntary*.

The stem **fi-** appears in English in the form *-fy* as a suffix in many words; *e.g. sanctify*, make sacred, from the stem of **sanctūs**, *sacred*, and **fi-**.

### STUDY XXIX. — PRONOUNS.

100. Pronouns in Latin are of about the same classes as in English.

1. The personal pronouns are **Ēgō**, *I*; **tū**, *thou*; **nōs**, *we*; **vōs**, *you*; **sē**, *self* or *selves*.

The inflection is as follows:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>S. and P.</i>
N.	<b>Ēgō</b>	} <b>nōs</b>		<b>tū</b>	} <b>vōs</b>		—
Ac.	<b>mē</b>			<b>tē</b>			<b>sē</b>
G.	<b>meī</b>	<b>nostrūm</b> ( <b>nostrī</b> )		<b>tui</b>	<b>vestrūm</b> ( <b>vestrī</b> )		<b>sui</b>
D.	<b>mihī</b>	} <b>nōbīs</b>		<b>tibi</b>	} <b>vōbīs</b>		<b>sibi</b>
Ab.	<b>mē</b>			<b>tē</b>			<b>sē</b>

It will be seen that the pronoun of the first person is inflected with three distinct stems, and that quite primitive forms occur. The pronoun of the second person has two stems. **Sē** is called a reflexive. It has no form for the nominative, is always in the third person, and always refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands; *e.g. Puēr sē āmāt*, *the boy loves himself*.

2. The possessive pronouns are adjectives, formed from the stems of the personals. They are **meūs**, *my*;

**tuŭs**, *thy*; **suŭs**, *his, hers, its, theirs*; **nostĕr**, *me*; **vestĕr**, *your*. They are all inflected as **o** and **a** stem adjectives: **meŭs**, **meŭm**, **meă**; **nostĕr**, **nostrŭm**, **nostră**; **vestĕr**, **vestrŭm**, **vestră**. **Tuŭs** and **suŭs** are inflected like **meŭs**.

The genitives of the personal pronouns are not used to denote possession. The possessive pronouns take their place in that meaning.

3. The demonstrative pronouns are **hic**, *this*; **illĕ**, *that*; **is**, *that*; **istĕ**, *that*.

Of the last three, all translated *that*, **illĕ** is emphatic, and **istĕ** often implies contempt. **Istĕ** often is used to refer to something belonging to the person addressed, and so is called the demonstrative of the second person.

The inflection of all these words shows some quite old forms. They are all used as adjectives, and are inflected in both numbers and all genders.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	M.	N.	F.	M.	N.	F.
N.	<b>hic</b>	<b>hŏc</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hae</b>
Ac.	<b>hunc</b>		<b>hanc</b>	<b>hōs</b>		<b>hās</b>
G.	<b>hūjūs</b>			<b>hōrŭm</b>		
D.	<b>huīc</b>			<b>hīs</b>		
Ab.	<b>hŏc</b>		<b>hāc</b>			

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	M.	N.	F.	M.	N.	F.
N.	<b>illĕ</b>	<b>illŭd</b>	<b>illă</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illă</b>	<b>illae</b>
Ac.	<b>illŭm</b>		<b>illăm</b>	etc.	etc.	etc.
G.	<b>illīŭs</b>			The plural is exactly like that of <b>cārŭs</b> (69).		
D.	<b>illī</b>					
Ab.	<b>illō</b>	<b>illă</b>				

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	N.	F.	M.	N.	F.
N.	is	id	eā	eī (ī)	eā	eae
Ac.	eūm		eām	eōs		eās
G.		ejūs		eōrūm		eārūm
D.		eī				
Ab.	eō	eā			eīs (īs)	

**Istē** is inflected like **illē**.

4. In Latin there is no personal pronoun of the third person but the reflexive **sē**. Therefore when such a pronoun was needed, some form of a demonstrative was used. **Īs** was usually the word: **Eām in hortō vidī**, *I saw her in the garden*. The others are more emphatic, and imply, — **hic**, something near the speaker; **istē**, something near the person addressed; **illē**, something near the person spoken of.

5. The intensive pronoun is **ipsē**, *self*. It is always used as an adjective. It is inflected in the singular as follows:

	M.	N.	F.
N.	ipsē	ipsūm	ipsā
Ac.	ipsūm		ipsām
G.		ipsiūs	
D.		ipsī	
Ab.	ipsō		ipsā

The plural is like that of **cārūs** (69): **ipsī**, **ipsā**, **ipsae**, etc.

6. **Īdēm**, *same*, is merely a compound of **is** and the suffix **-dēm**. It is inflected as follows:

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
M.	N.	F.	M.	N.	F.
N. <i>Idēm</i>	} <i>Idēm eādēm</i>		} <i>eīdēm eādēm eadēm</i>		
Ac. <i>*eundēm</i>		<i>*eandēm</i>			<i>easdēm</i>
G.	<i>ējusdēm</i>		<i>*eōrundēm eārundēm</i>		
D.	<i>eīdēm</i>		} <i>eīsdēm</i>		
Ab. <i>eōdēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>				

\* m is changed to n before d.

7. The relative pronoun, *qui*, *who*, is inflected as follows :

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
M.	N.	F.	M.	N.	F.
N. <i>quī</i>	} <i>quōd quae</i>		} <i>quae quae</i>		
Ac. <i>quēm</i>		<i>quām</i>			<i>quās</i>
G.	<i>cūjūs</i>		<i>quōrūm quārūm</i>		
D.	<i>cui</i>		} <i>quībūs</i>		
Ab. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>				

8. The interrogative pronoun may be used as an adjective, as "What man is in the garden?" or as a substantive, as "Who is in the garden?"

In the former sense the interrogative is exactly the same in form as the relative: *Quī vīr In hortō est?*

In the latter sense the interrogative differs from the relative only in the N. Sing. Masc., *quīs* in place of *quī*, and in the N. Ac. Sing. Neut., *quīd* in place of *quōd*: *Quīs In hortō est?*

9. There are several Latin indefinite pronouns, which mean *some* or *any*. They are compounds of

**quis** or **qui**. Two of the commonest are as follows :

**aliquis**, **aliquid** or **aliquid**, **aliqua**, *some, some one*  
**quidam**, **quiddam** or **quoddam**, **quaedam**, *certain, certain one*

In the compounds **quis** or **qui** is inflected, while the other part is unchanged.

The forms **quiddam**, **aliquid**, are used substantively, **quoddam**, **aliquid**, adjectively.

**Quidam in hortō est**, *a certain man is in the garden*. This implies that the speaker knows who it is, but does not say.

**Aliquis in hortō est**, *some one is in the garden*. This implies that the speaker knows that some one is there, but does not know who it is.

**Quoddam bellum in Galliā gerēbātūr**, *a certain war was waged in Gaul*.

**Mecum loquēbātūr**, *he was talking with me*. The preposition **cum** is attached as a suffix to the ablatives of the personal pronouns.

#### EXERCISES.

1. **Ēgō ambulābām, sed meā sōrōr dōmī (at home) mănēbāt.**
2. **Meus frātēr secūm locūtus est.**    3. **Amor mei eum egit.**
4. **Hic miles fortior quā illa virgo erat.**    5. **Puellam amābāt, sed eam quassit.**
6. **Ēgō ipsē frātrī locūtus eram.**
7. **Idem est qui semper erat.**    8. **Orator qui tam (so) eloquens fuit in vincula jactus est.**
9. **Quis honestus est?**
10. **Quidam magister honestissimus est.**

1. The woman who was walking in the garden is beautiful.    2. Somebody (= I don't know who) is talk-

ing. 3. The boys washed themselves. 4. The men themselves were soldiers. 5. We saw him in the city.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

**Ēgō** we use in such words as *egotist*, the meaning of which is obvious. Our word *me* is not derived from the Latin **mē**, but they both come from the same root in the common language from which Old English and Latin both are descended.

**Īdēm** we have in *identity*, which means *sameness*.

*Quiddity* is an odd word. It means a trifling nicety of distinction, applied to the thoughts of a writer who is over exact and minute in answering the question, *quid est, what is it?*

---

#### STUDY XXX.—PARTICLES.

**101.** Words which are not inflected are called particles. The Latin particles are adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.

**102.** Latin adverbs are usually accusative or ablative cases of nouns or adjectives: **partīm**, *partly*; **obviām** (= **ōb + viām**), *in the way, against*; **sōlūm**, *only*; **fācile**, *easily*; **plūs**, *more*; **jūrē**, *rightly*; **dextrā** (= **dextrā partē**), *on the right*; **eā** (= **eā viā**), *there, in that way*.

Some adverbs are formed by attaching the suffix **-tūs** or **-tēr** to a noun or adjective stem: **rādicītūs**, *from the roots, utterly*; **fortītēr**, *bravely*; **durītēr**, *harshly*; **āmantēr**, *lovingly*.



Before these suffixes a stem vowel must be **ĭ** (so in **dūrītēr** = **dūrō** + **tēr**, **ō** is changed to **ĭ**), and **ĭ** is often inserted after a consonant stem (thus **rādic** + **tēr** = **rādicītēr**).

The adverb formed from a comparative adjective is the neuter accusative singular: **cārīōr**, *dearer*; **cārīūs**, *more dearly*.

The adverb formed from a superlative adjective is formed by a change of the stem vowel to **ē**: **cārissīmūs**, *dearest*; **cārissīmē**, *most dearly*.

Adverbs of place or time often have the form of a genitive singular: **vespērī**, *in the evening*.

The accusative or ablative ending seen in the adverb is often a very old one. Thus **cārissīmē** is doubtless an ablative in **ē**, instead of **ō**.

## 103.

## LIST OF ADVERBS.

<b>bōnē</b> , <i>well</i>	<b>mēliūs</b> , <i>better</i>	<b>optīmē</b> , <i>best</i>
<b>mālē</b> , <i>badly</i>	<b>pējūs</b> , <i>worse</i>	<b>pessīmē</b> , <i>worst</i>
<b>multūm</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>māgis</b> , <i>more</i>	<b>maxīmē</b> , <i>most, especially</i>
<b>vērūm</b> , <i>truly</i>		<b>tandēm</b> , <i>at length, finally</i>
<b>fācīlē</b> , <i>truly, easily</i>		<b>ālīās</b> , <i>otherwise</i>
<b>certē</b> , <i>surely</i>		<b>grātīs</b> , <i>free</i>
<b>quām</b> , <i>how much</i>		<b>sēmēl</b> , <i>once</i>
<b>tām</b> , <i>so</i>		<b>bīs</b> , <i>twice</i>
<b>dextrā</b> , <i>on the right</i>		<b>tēr</b> , <i>three times</i>
<b>sīnistrā</b> , <i>on the left</i>		<b>quātēr</b> , <i>four times</i>
<b>extrā</b> , <i>on the outside</i>		<b>quīnquiēs</b> , <i>five times</i>
<b>īnfrā</b> , <i>on the under side</i>		<b>sexiēs</b> , <i>six times</i>
<b>quā</b> ? <i>in what way?</i>		<b>septiēs</b> , <i>seven times</i>
<b>sīc</b> , <i>thus</i>		<b>octiēs</b> , <i>eight times</i>
<b>ībī</b> , <i>there</i>		<b>nōviēs</b> , <i>nine times</i>
<b>ūbī</b> , <i>where</i>		<b>dēciēs</b> , <i>ten times</i>
<b>undē</b> , <i>whence</i>		<b>centiēs</b> , <i>100 times</i>
<b>ōlīm</b> , <i>formerly</i>		

**104.** Prepositions in Latin were originally adverbs, and so have the form usually of old accusative or ablative cases.

They are used only with the accusative or ablative cases.

### 105. LIST OF PREPOSITIONS.

#### Governing the Accusative.

<b>ad</b> , to, towards	<b>ob</b> , before, on account of
<b>antē</b> , before	<b>pēr</b> , through
<b>circūm</b> , around, about	<b>post</b> , behind
<b>cis</b> , <b>citrā</b> , on this side	<b>praetēr</b> , before, beyond
<b>extrā</b> , outside	<b>prōpē</b> , near
<b>infra</b> , below	<b>sūprā</b> , on top of, above
<b>intēr</b> , between, among	<b>trans</b> , across, on the other side
<b>intrā</b> , within	<b>ultrā</b> , beyond

#### Governing the Ablative.

<b>ā</b> , <b>ab</b> , from, away from	<b>ē</b> , <b>ex</b> , from, out of
<b>cūm</b> , with, in company with	<b>prae</b> , before, because of
<b>dē</b> , from, down from	<b>prō</b> , before, in behalf of

#### Governing the Accusative or Ablative.

**in**, with the ablative, *in, on, at*; with the accusative, *into, against*

**sūb**, under

**in** and **sūb** take the accusative after a verb implying motion, the ablative after a verb implying rest.

**subtēr**, under

**sūpēr**, over

**106.** Conjunctions in Latin, as in English, connect words, phrases, or clauses.

Coördinate conjunctions connect similar constructions: **Quidā́m hōmō ḗt cānīs ambū́lābāt**, *a man and a dog were walking*.

A subordinate conjunction connects a subordinate clause to its antecedent: **Cū́m māgīstēr ambū́lābāt, dōcḗbāt**, *while the teacher was walking, he was teaching*.

### 107. LIST OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Coördinate.	Subordinate.
<b>ḗt</b> , <i>and</i>	<b>cū́m</b> , <i>when, since</i>
<b>atquḗ, āc</b> , <i>and also</i>	<b>sīmū́l</b> , <i>as soon as</i>
<b>-quḗ</b> , <i>and</i> (-quḗ is always attached, as an enclitic, to the second of the two words connected: <b>vīr cānīsquḗ</b> , <i>the man and the dog</i> )	<b>dū́m</b> , <i>while, until</i>
<b>nēquḗ, nēc</b> , <i>and not</i>	<b>quā́m</b> , <i>as</i>
<b>ḗt . . . ḗt</b> , <i>both . . . and</i>	<b>sī</b> , <i>if</i>
<b>nēc . . . nēc</b> , <i>neither . . . nor</i>	<b>nī́sī</b> , <i>if not, unless</i>
<b>aut</b> , <i>or</i>	<b>dū́mmōdṓ</b> , <i>provided</i>
<b>aut . . . aut</b> , <i>either . . . or</i>	<b>quamquā́m</b> , <i>although</i>
<b>sḗd</b> , <i>but</i>	<b>ūt</b> , <i>in order that, so that</i>
<b>ergṓ</b> , <i>therefore</i>	<b>nḗ</b> , <i>that not</i>
<b>nā́m</b> , <i>for</i>	<b>ūt nṓn</b> , <i>so that not</i>
	<b>quṓd</b> , <i>because</i>
	<b>quī́ā</b> , “
	<b>-nḗ, nonnḗ, nū́m</b> ( <i>interrogative</i> )

108. Interjections express feeling. They are rarely translated by an equivalent English word.

### EXERCISES.

1. Cānēs cḗlērītēr cū́currērunt.
2. Vīrī ḗt fēmīnae īn urbē hā́bītābāt.
3. Extrā mūrōs āgrī pessīmē cōlḗbantūr.
4. Milēs fḗrox pēr corpūs hostīs glā́diūm bīs percussīt.
5. Ād urbḗm vḗnērunt.
6. Dux milī́tesquḗ prōpē montḗm

castrā pōsuērunt. 7. Sēd hostēs cēlērīūs vēniēbant nē  
 infrā pūgnārēt. 8. Milītēs dē montē tām tardē vēniē-  
 bant ūt hostēs nōn occūrrēbantūr. 9. Ēt consūl ēt tribū-  
 nūs irātī ērant quīā hostēs nōn vertērentūr. 10. Dulcē  
 ēt dēcōrūm est prō patriā mōrī.

1. Near the sea were a mountain and a forest.  
 2. We walked away from the sea and into the  
 forest. 3. When we saw wild animals in the for-  
 est, we walked around the mountain. 4. We ran  
 swiftly, because we had (*subjunctive*) no swords.  
 5. On the right and on the left were huge trees.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

Latin adverbs occur in English mostly in com-  
 pound words: *malefactor* = *mālē* + *factōr*, *one who*  
*does badly*; *benefactor* = *bēnē* + *factōr*, *one who does*  
*well*.

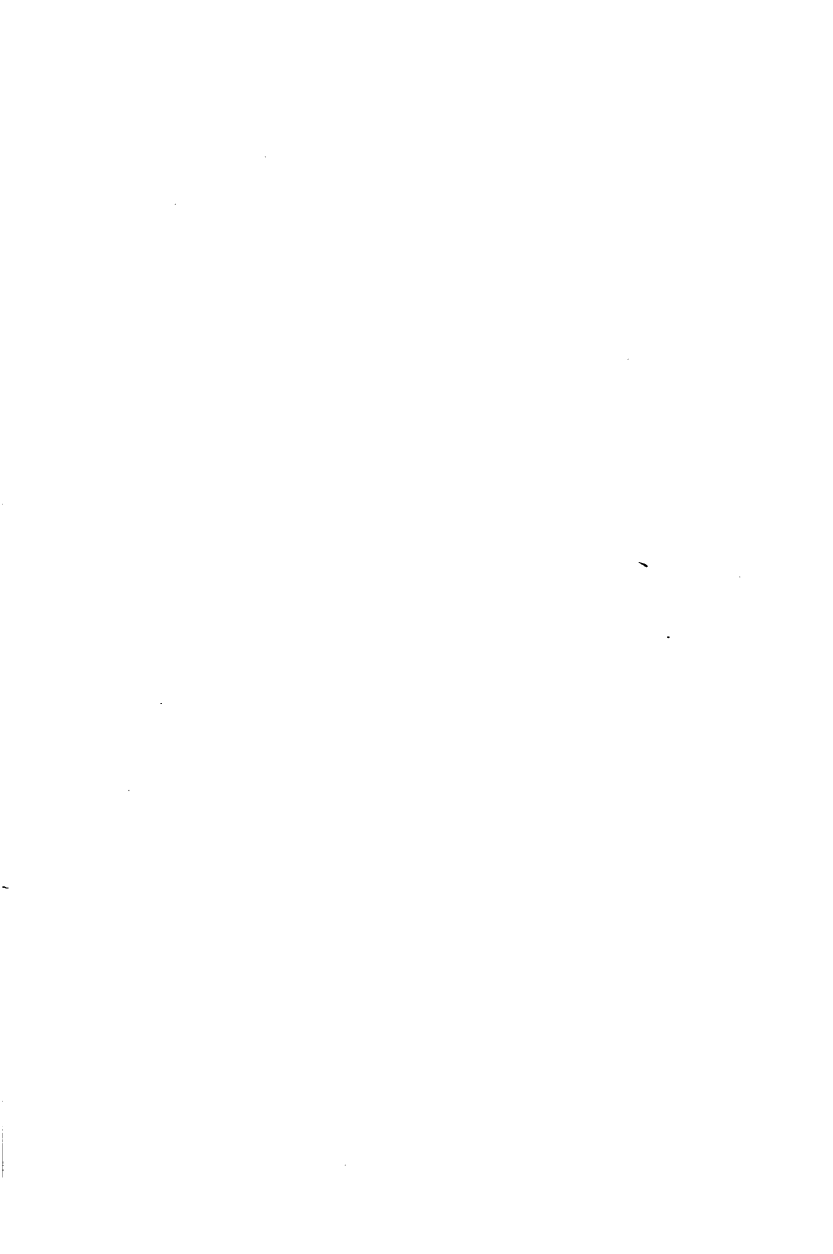
A few adverbs are used directly as English words:  
*alias* = *āliās*, *otherwise* — also used as a noun, *an alias*  
 = an *otherwise* name, *i.e.* an assumed name; *gratis* =  
*grātis*, *free*; *tandem* = *tandēm*, *at length* — applied to  
 a span of horses driven one in front of another, *i.e.* *at*  
*length*. This last is a whimsical use of the word, — a  
 sort of pun.

Latin prepositions also we use, usually as prefixes  
 in derivative words: *transalpine* = *trans* + *Alpīnūs*,  
*across the Alps*. We sometimes use these prefixes  
 with a word which is not Latin: *trans-Mississippi* =  
*across the Mississippi*.



**PART III.**

**HOW LATIN WORDS ARE MADE  
FROM OTHERS.**



## PART III.

### HOW LATIN WORDS ARE MADE FROM OTHERS.



#### STUDY XXXI.—THE DERIVATION OF WORDS.

109. Let us study the following words: the noun *nōmēn*, *name*, G. *nōmīnis*; the adjective *nōbīlis*, *well known*; the verb *noscō*, *I know*, perf. indic. *nōvī*, *I have known*; perf. participle *nōtūs*, *known*; the verb *nōmīnō*, *I name*, perf. indic. *nōmīnāvī*, *I have named*; perf. participle *nōmīnātūs*, *named*.

We notice that all of them have the syllable *no*. This we call the root.

We see that all of them mean something about *knowing* (a *name* is that by which a person or thing is *known*). This must be the meaning of the root.

We have learned (18 *a*) that the part of a word to which the endings of inflection are attached is called the STEM. And we see that the stem of the noun above is *nōmīn*; that the stem of the adjective is *nōbīlī*-; that of *noscō*, the verb stem is *no*-, the present stem is *nosc*-, the perfect stem *nōv*-, and the supine stem *nōt*-; that of *nōmīnō*, the verb stem and present



stem are **nōmīnā-**, the perfect stem **nōmīnāv-**, and the supine stem **nōmīnāt-**.

It at once appears that the stem **nōmīn-** is formed from the root **no-** by adding the suffix **-mīn-**; the various stems of **noscō** by attaching to the same root (which is the same as the verb stem) the suffixes **-sc-**, **-v-**, and **-t-**; and the stem of **nōbīlis** by attaching to **no-** the suffix **-bīl-**. All these stems, then, are formed directly from the root.

But the verb stem **nōmīnā-** is evidently formed from the noun stem **nōmīn-** by attaching the vowel **ā**.

Stems, then, we infer, are formed directly from roots or directly from other stems, in each case by attaching suffixes.

Stems formed directly from roots, like **nōmīn-**, are called **PRIMARY STEMS**. Stems formed from other stems, like **nōmīnā-**, are called **SECONDARY STEMS**.

**110.** Let us look at a few other nouns: **praenōmēn**, *first name* (literally, *fore name*); **cognōmēn**, *last name* (literally, *with name*); **agnōmēn**, *added name*.

We see that all of these have the same stem, **nōmīn-**, but differ in the prefix.

We see also that these prefixes are all prepositions: **prae**, *before*; **co-** (= **cūm**), *with* (the **g** in **cognōmēn** we should find on careful study to be a part of the older form of the stem **-gnōmīn-**, from the older form of the root, **gnō-**); **ad-** (**123**), *to* (*i.e.* a name attached *to* a name = an *added name*).

Prepositions, with some sort of adverbial sense, usually, are commonly used as prefixes.

Besides those in the list (123), there are some prepositions which are used only as prefixes: **ambī**, **amb**, *around*; **dīs**, **dī**, *asunder, apart*; **īn**, *not* (= the English *un-*); **pōr**, *toward*; **rē**, **rēd**, *back*; **sē**, **sēd**, *aside, apart*; **vē**, *not*.

Not infrequently a verb with a prefix shows a change of its radical vowel: **tēneō**, *I hold*; **contīneō**, *I hold together*. Here the short *e* becomes short *i*. The same change is often made with short *a*: **hābeō**, *I have*; **ādhībeō**, *I have to myself, i.e. I take, or adopt*. The diphthong *ae*, in like manner, becomes *ī*: **caedō**, *I cut*; **incīdō**, *I cut into*. The diphthong *au* becomes *ū*: **claudō**, *I close*; **inclūdō**, *I close into, I include*.

111. Let us look at another set of nouns: **respublicā**, *republic*; **āgrīcultūrā**, *agriculture*; **ignīcōlōr**, *fire colored*; and the adjective **magnānīmūs**, *great souled*.

We see at once that each of these consists of two separate words joined together, neither being a mere preposition. **Respublicā** = the noun **rēs**, *thing*, + the adjective **publicā**, *public*; **āgrīcultūrā** = the noun stem **āgrō-** (*ō* changed to *i*), *field*, + the noun **cultūrā**, *cultivation*; **ignīcōlōr** = the noun stem **ignī-**, *fire*, + the noun **cōlōr**, *color*; **magnānīmūs** = the adjective stem **magnō-**, *great*, + the noun **ānīmūs**, *soul*.

We notice also: (1) That the first part is usually a stem (it would be in **respublicā**, except that that word is often written as two—**rēs publicā**); (2) that the stem vowel before a consonant appears as *i* (**āgrī**, instead of **āgrō-**); (3) that the stem vowel before another vowel is dropped (**magn-** instead of **magnō-**).

112. There is another group of compound words worth examining: **artifex**, stem **artific-**, *artificer*; **āgrīcōlā**, *farmer*.

The stem **artific** = **artī-** *art*, + **fīc-** (= **fāc-**, 87), the stem of **fāciō**, *I do, I make*. Hence **artifex** = one who *does an act*, i.e. an artificer.

The stem **āgrīcōlā** = **āgrī-** (= **āgrō-**, 111), *a field*, + **cōl-ā**. **cōl-** is the stem of **cōlō**, *I cultivate*. Hence **āgrīcōlā** = one who *cultivates a field*, i.e. a farmer.

113. Primary stems are formed with a variety of suffixes, each usually having a definite meaning.

These primary suffixes consist either of a single vowel, or of a vowel with one or two consonants.

1. Vowel suffixes: root **fūg-**, noun stem **fūgā-**, *flight*, present stem of verb **fūgī-**, *flee* (with perfect stem **fūg-**, and supine stem **fūgīt-**), present stem of verb **fūgā-**, *put to flight* (with perfect stem **fūgāv-** and supine stem **fūgāt-**). In like manner are formed many noun stems in **a** and **o**, a few noun stems in **e**, **i**, and **u**, and present stems of verbs in **a**, **e**, **i**, and **u**.

2. Suffixes in a vowel with one or two consonants: root **gēn-**, noun stem **gēnēs-** (N. Ac. **gēnūs**, G. **gēnērīs** — **s** between two vowels becoming **r**), *race*; root **plē-**, adj. stem. **plēnō-** (N. Sing. **plēnūs**, **ūm**, **ā**), *full*. From these same roots verb stems also are formed: root **gēn-**, used as a verb stem, present stem **gīgn-** (= **gīgēn-**, by reduplication), perfect stem **gēnū-**, supine stem **gēnīt**; root **plē-**, verb stem **plē-**, present stem **plē-**, perfect stem **plēv-**, supine stem **plēt-**.

There are a few primary suffixes which have a force worth noting.

**-mīn-** denotes the MEANS of an act, the ACT itself, or its RESULT: root **tēg-**, *to cover*, stem **tegīmīn-** (N. **tegīmēn**, neut.), *a covering* (e.g. cloth or skin); root **no-**, *to know*, stem **nōmīn-**

(N. **nōmēn**, neut.), a name (= the means by which a person or thing is known).

**-tēr** (= **tr-**), **-tōr-** denote the DOER of an action: root **pă-**, to protect, to feed, stem **pătr-** (N. **pătēr**, masc.), father (i.e. he who protects, or provides food); root **vīc-**, to conquer, stem **victōr-** (N. **victōr**, masc.), a conqueror.

**tro-** denotes the MEANS of an action: root **ār-**, to plough, stem **ārātrō-** (N. **ārātrūm**, neut.), a plough.

**-ent-** is used to form present participles, and a few adjectives: root **āg-**, to drive, stem **āgent-** (N. **āgens**), driving.

**114. a.** A few primary stems are formed by other changes as well as by suffixes.

Root **căn-**, to sing, perfect stem **cēcīn-**. This is formed by prefixing to the root the initial letter with **ē** (**ă** in the root becoming **ī**, — as usual after a prefix). Such a change is called reduplication (**86, 1**).

Root **duc-**, to lead, present stem **duc-** (**ducō**, I lead). To form the stem the root vowel is lengthened.

Root **frāg-**, to break, present stem **frang-** (**frangō**, I break). A nasal is inserted (**86, 2**).

But the formation of primary stems by suffixes is the ordinary way.

**b.** The suffixes which form secondary stems are very numerous, and they usually have a meaning quite definite: **-ūră** denotes an act, — **ăgrīcultūră**, agriculture; **-ōr** denotes the doer of an act, — root **vīc-**, conquer, supine stem **vict-**, noun stem **victōr-** (N. **victōr**, m.), a conqueror. **Victōr** may thus be regarded as formed with the secondary suffix **-or** added to the supine stem of the verb **vīncō**. Compare above, near end of **113**.

The suffixes, whether primary or secondary, will be explained in the following Studies.

## STUDY XXXII. — THE DERIVATION OF LATIN NOUNS.

### 115. From noun stems.

-lō-, -lā-, form DIMINUTIVES.

stem **filiō-**, *son*, **filiō-lō-** (N. **filiōlūs**), *little son*

“ **filiā-**, *daughter*, **filiō-lā-** (N. **filiōlā**), *little daughter*

This suffix sometimes has the form -cūlō-, -cūlā-.

stem **ōs-**, *a mouth*, **oscūlō-** (N. **oscūlūm**), *a small mouth, a kiss*

-**āriō-** forms masculine nouns denoting the *occupation* of a person, and neuters denoting the *place* where something is kept.

stem **antīquō-**, *ancient*, **antīquāriō-** (N. **antīquāriūs**, masc.), *an antiquary*

“ **ēmissō-**, *sent*, **ēmissāriō-** (N. **ēmissāriūs**), *a scout, an emissary*

“ **āvi-**, *bird*, **āviāriō-** (N. **āviāriūm**, neut.), *an aviary*

“ **diē-**, *day*, **diāriō-** (N. **diāriūm**, neut.), *a diary*

“ **grānō-**, *grain*, **grānāriō-** (N. **grānāriūm**, neut.), *a granary*

### 116. From adjective stems.

A noun formed from an adjective is the name of the quality apart from any particular thing, and is called an ABSTRACT NOUN.

The Latin suffixes are as follows :

-iā-, -īmoniā-, -itā-

-tāt-, -ītāt- (N. -tās, -ītās)

-tūt- (N. -tūs)

-ītūdīn- (N. -ītūdō)

Stem.	Abstract Noun Stem.
diligent-, diligent	diligentiā-, diligence
ācri-, sharp	acrimōniā-, sharpness.
amicō-, friendly	amicitiā-, friendship.
liberō-, free	libertāt- (N. libertās), liberty
cārō-, dear	cāritāt- (N. cāritās), affection
vīrō-, man (a noun)	virtūt- (N. virtūs), manliness
sōlō-, alone	sōlitūdīn- (N. sōlitūdō), solitude
fortī-, brave	fortitūdīn- (N. fortitūdō), bravery
magnō-, great	magnitūdīn- (N. magnitūdō), greatness

A stem vowel disappears before these suffixes.

### 117. From verb stems and from roots.

From roots and from the stems of verbs are formed nouns which are the names of various ideas connected in some way with the meaning of the radical.

The principal ideas thus denoted are as follows.

1. The ACT (OR STATE) itself: root *ām-*, love, noun stem *āmōr-* (N. *āmōr*), love.

2. The DOER of the act: verb stem *āmā-*, love, noun stem *āmātōr-* (N. *āmātōr*), a lover.

3. The MEANS OR INSTRUMENT of the act: verb stem *ārā-*, plough, noun stem *ārātrō-* (N. *ārātrūm*), a plough.

4. The RESULT of the act: verb stem *aedificā-*, build, noun stem *aedificiō-* (N. *aedificiūm*), a building.

5. The PLACE of the act (or state): verb stem *stā-*, stand, noun stem *stābūlō-* (N. *stābūlūm*), a stall (i.e. a place for cattle to stand).

The principal suffixes which form noun stems denoting these ideas are as follows:

## 1. The ACT (OR STATE).

Suffix.	Root (or Stem).	Derivative.
- <b>ūrā-</b> (N. - <b>ūrā</b> )	<b>cōlērē</b> , to care for	<b>cultūrā</b> , care (- <b>ūrā</b> is added to the supine stem)
- <b>iē-</b> (N. - <b>iēs</b> )	<b>rābērē</b> , to rave	<b>rābiēs</b> , raving
- <b>ī-</b> (N. - <b>ēs</b> )	<b>caedērē</b> , to kill	<b>caedēs</b> , slaughter
- <b>iō-</b> (N. - <b>iūm</b> )	<b>bēnēficērē</b> , to do a kindness	<b>bēnēficiūm</b> , kindness
- <b>ū-</b> (N. - <b>ūs</b> )	<b>advēnīrē</b> , to arrive (sup. stem <b>advent-</b> )	<b>advētūs</b> , arriving
- <b>iōn-</b> (N. - <b>iō</b> )	<b>ōpīnārī</b> , to think	<b>ōpīniō</b> , thinking, opinion

The suffix **-ū-** is regularly, and **-iōn-** often, attached to a supine stem.

**admōnērē**, to advise (supine stem **admōnīt-**), **admōnitiō**, advising.

These derivatives in **io**, from supine stems, are very numerous.

- <b>ōr-</b> (N. - <b>ōr</b> )	<b>āmārē</b> , to love	<b>āmōr</b> , love
--------------------------------	------------------------	--------------------

These are attached to the present stem (nude) of a verb.

## 2. The DOER of the act.

-**ōr-** (N. -**ōr**), attached to the supine stem. All masculine:

<b>accusārē</b> , to accuse	<b>accusātōr</b> , an accuser
<b>āmārē</b> , to love	<b>āmātōr</b> , a lover
<b>dēbērē</b> , to owe	<b>dēbitōr</b> , one who owes, a debtor
<b>crēdērē</b> , to trust	<b>crēditōr</b> , one who trusts, a creditor
<b>āgērē</b> , to do	<b>actōr</b> , one who does, an actor

-**ric-** (N. -**rix**), attached to the supine stem. All feminine:

<b>vincērē</b> , to conquer	<b>victrix</b> , a (female) conqueror
-----------------------------	---------------------------------------

## 3. The MEANS OR INSTRUMENT of the act.

-trō- (N. -trūm). All neuter :

ārārē, to plough

ārātrūm, a plough

-mōniō- (N. -mōniūm) :

ālērē, to nourish

ālīmōniūm, nourishment

-mentō- (N. -mentūm) :

ālērē, to nourish

ālimentūm, nourishment

-mīn- (N. -mēn) :

fluērē, to flow

flūmēn, a stream

-būlō- (N. -būlūm) :

pascērē, to feed

pābūlūm, fodder

-brō- (N. -brūm) :

candērē, to shine

candēlā, a candle

candēlābrūm, a candlestick

-cūlō- (N. -cūlūm) :

rēceptārē, to receive

rēceptācūlūm, a receptacle

-crō- (N. -crūm) :

fulcrērē, to prop

fulcrūm, a prop

sēpēlīrē, to bury

sēpulcrūm, a tomb

## 4. The RESULT of the act.

-ūrā- (attached to the supine stem), feminine :

āpērīrē, to open

āpērtūrā, an opening

Sometimes suffixes usually denoting *means* are used to express *result*; e.g. from *frangēre*, to break, comes *fragmentūm*, a fragment.

Sometimes derivatives in *-iēs*, *-ēs*, *-iūm*, *-iō*, and *-ūs* denote *result*; e.g. *exercērē*, to drill, *exercitūs*, a drilled army.



## 5. The PLACE of the act.

Suffixes which usually denote the *instrument* may also denote *place*; e.g. *stāre*, to stand, *stābulūm*, a stable.

## EXERCISES.

It will be understood that the lists following throughout Part III. contain merely selected examples.

## I. Nouns from the stems of other nouns (Secondary derivatives). 115.

**calx** (calci-), *chalk*, **calcūlūs**, a pebble; **circūs** (circū-), a circle, **circūlūs**, a little circle; **glōbūs** (glōbō-), a ball, **glōbūlūs**, a little ball; **mōdūs** (mōdō-), a measure, **mōdūlūs**, a little measure; **scrūpūs** (scrūpō-), a stone, **scrūpūlūs**, a little stone, a difficulty; **ventūs** (ventō-), wind, **ventūlūs**, a breeze; **capsā** (capsā-), a box, **capsūlā**, a little box; **formā** (formā-), a form, **formūlā**, a short form; **antiquūm** (antiquō-), something ancient, **antiquāriūs**, an antiquarian; **libēr** (librō-), a book, **librāriūs**, a transcriber (= one who makes books. The Roman books were written, and were reproduced by copying); **nōtā** (nōtā-), writing, **nōtāriūs**, a short-hand writer, a secretary; **aestūs** (aestū-), a tide, **aestuāriūm**, a tidal bay; **āvis** (āvī-), a bird, **āviāriūm**, an aviary; **grānūm** (grānō-), grain, **grānāriūm**, a granary; **cālendae** (pl.) (cālendā-), the first day of the month, the calends, **cālendāriūm**, an account book (because used to keep account of the interest due on money, which was due on the first of the month); **sāl** (sāl-), salt, **sālāriūm**, salt money, salary.

## II. Nouns from adjective stems (Secondary derivatives). 116.

**audax** (audāc-), bold, **audāciā**, boldness; **concor** (concord-), agreeing, **concordiā**, harmony; **fallax** (fallāc-), deceit-

*ful*, *fallăciă*, *deceit*; *infămis* (infămî-), *disgraceful*, *infămiă*, *disgrace*; *mēmōr* (mēmōr-), *mindful*, *mēmōriă*, *memory*; *mîsēr* (mîsērō-), *wretched*, *mîsəriă*, *wretchedness*; *ăcēr* (ăcîrî-), *sharp*, *ăcîrmōniă*, *sharpness*; *parsŭs* (parsō-, participle of *parcō*), *having spared*, *parsîmōniă*, *parsimony*; *sanctŭs* (sanctō-), *holy*, *sanctîmōniă*, *sanctity*; *justŭs* (justō-), *just*, *justîtiă*, *justice*; *mălŭs* (mălō-), *bad*, *mălîtiă*, *mischievousness*; *ămicŭs* (ămicō-), *friendly*, *ămicîtiă*, *friendship*; *ăvărŭs* (ăvărō-), *greedy*, *ăvărîtiă*, *greediness*; *nōtŭs* (nōtō-), *known*, *nōtîtiă*, *acquaintance*; *affluens* (affluent-), *abounding*, *affluentîă*, *abundance*; *audiens* (audient-), *hearing*, *audientiă*, *a hearing*; *bĕnĕvōlens* (bĕnĕvōlent-), *well wishing*, *bĕnĕvōlentiă*, *good will*; *clēmens* (clĕment-), *merciful*, *clĕmentiă*, *mercifulness*; *contĭnens* (contĭnent-), *restraining oneself*, *contĭnentiă*, *self-control*; *dilĭgens* (dilĭgent-), *careful*, *dilĭgentîă*, *carefulness*; *ĕlĕgans* (ĕlĕgant-), *neat*, *ĕlĕgantiă*, *neatness*; *frĕquens* (frĕquent-), *crowding*, *frĕquentîă*, *a crowd*; *indĭgens* (indĭgent-), *needy*, *indĭgentîă*, *need*; *infans* (infant-), *not speaking*, *infantiă*, *speechlessness*; *intelligens* (intelligent-), *understanding*, *intelligentiă*, *intelligence*; *neglĭgens* (neglĭgent-), *careless*, *neglĭgentîă*, *carelessness*; *pestilens* (pestilent-), *infectious*, *pestilentiă*, *infection*; *pĕtŭlans* (pĕtŭlant-), *forward*, *pĕtŭlantiă*, *forward conduct*; *prŭdens* (prŭdent = provĭdent-), *foreseeing*, *prŭdentiă*, *forethought*; *săpiens* (săpient-), *wise*, *săpientiă*, *wisdom*; *ăcerbŭs* (ăcerbō-), *tart*, *ăcerbîtăs* (-tăt-), *tartness*; *aequălis* (aequăll-), *equal*, *aequălltăs* (-tăt-), *equality*; *aequŭs* (aequō-), *fair*, *aequîtăs* (-tăt-), *fairness*; *aeternŭs* (aeternō-), *everlasting*, *aeternîtăs* (-tăt-), *eternity*; *affinĭs* (affinĭ-), *related by marriage*, *affinĭtăs* (-tăt-), *relationship by marriage*; *ăgilĭs* (ăgillĭ-), *quick*, *ăgillîtăs* (-tăt-), *quickness*; *jŭvenĭs* (jŭvenĭ-), *young*, *jŭventŭs* (-tŭt-), *youth*; *altŭs* (altō-), *high*, *altĭtŭdō* (-tŭdĭn-), *height*; *amplŭs* (amplō-), *of large extent*, *amplĭtŭdō* (-tŭdĭn-), *large extent*; *lassŭs* (lassō-), *weary*, *lassĭtŭdō* (-tŭdĭn-), *weariness*; *lătŭs* (latō-), *wide*, *lătĭtŭdō* (-tŭdĭn-), *width*; *longŭs* (longō-), *long*, *longĭtŭdō* (-tŭdĭn-), *length*; *magnŭs* (magnō-), *large*,

**magnitūdō** (-tūdīn-), *greatness*; **multūs** (multō-), *many*, **multitūdō** (-tūdīn-), *great number*; **similis** (simīli-), *like*, **similitūdō** (-tūdīn-), *likeness*; **sōlus** (sōlō-), *alone*, **sōlītūdō** (-tūdīn-), *solitude*.

### III. Nouns from verb stems (Secondary derivatives) or from roots (Primary derivatives). 117.

#### Stems in -iō-. 117, 1.

**ōdissē**, *to hate*, **ōdiūm**, *hatred*; **officērē**, *to do towards*, **officiūm**, *duty*; **prae**, **ēmēre**, *to buy first*, **praemiūm**, *a first choice, a reward*; **stūdērē**, *to apply the mind zealously*, **stūdiūm**, *zeal*.

#### Stems in -u-. 117, 1.

**advenīrē** (**adventūs**), *to arrive*, **adventūs**, *arrival*; **appētīrē** (**appētītūs**), *to desire*, **appētītūs**, *desire, appetite*; **apparārē** (**apparātūs**), *to equip*, **apparātūs**, *equipment*; **arbitrārī** (**arbitrātūs**), *to judge*, **arbitrātūs**, *judgment*; **aspīcērē** (**aspectūs**), *to see*, **aspectūs**, *sight*; **audīrē** (**audītūs**), *to hear*, **audītūs**, *hearing*; **cāpērē** (**captūs**), *to seize*, **captūs**, *grasp*; **cādērē** (**cāsūs**), *to fall*, **cāsūs**, *an accident*; **cānērē** (**cantūs**), *to sing*, **cantūs**, *a song*; **censērē** (**censūs**), *to reckon*, **censūs**, *a reckoning*; **crūciārē** (**crūciātūs**), *to torture*, **crūciātūs**, *torture*; **ēvenīrē** (**ēventūs**), *to occur*, **ēventūs**, *an occurrence*; **exīrē** (**exitūs**), *to go out*, **exitūs**, *departure*; **fluērē** (**fluctūs**), *to flow*, **fluctūs**, *a wave*; **hābērē** (**hābītūs**), *to have*, **hābītūs**, *habit*; **mōvērē** (**mōtūs**), *to move*, **mōtūs**, *motion*; **tangērē** (**tactūs**), *to touch*, **tactūs**, *touch*; **transīrē** (**transītūs**), *to go across*, **transītūs**, *passage*.

#### Stems in -iōn-. 117, 1.

*Attached to present stems.*

**condīcērē**, *to agree*, **condīciō**, *terms of agreement*; **oblīvisci**, *to forget*, **oblīviō**, *forgetfulness*; **optārē**, *to choose*,

*optiō*, a choice; *rēgērē*, to mark out boundaries, *rēgiō*, a district; *suspīcērē* (= *sub* + *spēcērē*, to look), to look under the surface, *suspīciō*, suspicion.

*Attached to supine stems.*

*accūsārē* (*accūsātūs*), to accuse, *accūsātiō*, accusation; *advōcārē* (*advōcātūs*), to call to one's aid, *advōcātiō*, legal assistance; *aestīmārē* (*aestīmātūs*), to value, *aestīmātiō*, valuation; *āgītārē* (*āgītātūs*), to toss, *āgītātiō*, tossing; *altercārē* (*altercātūs*), to dispute, *altercātiō*, dispute; *attribuērē* (*attribūtūs*), to assign, *attribūtiō*, assignment; *cēlēbrārē* (*cēlēbrātūs*), to assemble, *cēlēbrātiō*, an assembly; *cōgitārē* (*cōgitātūs*), to think, *cōgitātiō*, thinking; *constituērē* (*constitūtūs*), to arrange, *constitūtiō*, arrangement; *contemplārē* (*contemplātūs*), to contemplate, *contemplātiō*, contemplation; *damnārē* (*damnātūs*), to condemn, *damnātiō*, condemnation; *dēclīnārē* (*dēclīnātūs*), to turn aside, *dēclīnātiō*, turning aside; *dēfinīrē* (*dēfinītūs*), to mark off, *dēfinītiō*, marking off; *dēlēgārē* (*dēlēgātūs*), to assign, *dēlēgātiō*, assignment; *dēmīnūērē* (*dēmīnūtūs*), to decrease, *dēmīnūtiō*, decrease; *despērārē* (*despērātūs*), to despair, *despērātiō*, despair; *dissolvērē* (*dissōlūtūs*), to dissolve, *dissōlūtiō*, dissolution; *dōmīnārē* (*dōmīnātūs*), to rule, to act the lord, *dōmīnātiō*, lordship; *ēdūcārē* (*ēdūcātūs*), to bring up, *ēdūcātiō*, bringing up; *ērūdirē* (*ērūdītūs*), to polish, *ērūdītiō*, instruction; *exsēquī* (*exsēcūtūs*), to follow out, to accomplish, *exsēcūtiō*, accomplishment; *frustrārē* (*frustrātūs*), to deceive, *frustrātiō*, deceiving; *grātūlārī* (*grātūlātūs*), to wish joy, *grātūlātiō*, congratulation; *īmītārī* (*īmītātūs*), to imitate, *īmītātiō*, imitation; *īnquīrērē* (*īnquīsītūs*), to seek into, *īnquīsītiō*, legal inquiry; *lēgārē* (*lēgātūs*), to send an ambassador, also, to leave by will, *lēgātiō*, the office of an ambassador; *libērārē* (*libērātūs*), to set free, *libērātiō*, a release; *māchīnārē* (*māchīnātūs*), to contrive, *māchīnātiō*, contrivance; *mūnīrē* (*mūnītūs*), to fortify, *mūnītiō*, fortification; *mūtārē* (*mūtātūs*), to change, *mūtātiō*, change; *nascī*

(*nātūs*), to be born, *nātiō*, a breed; *nōtārē* (*nōtātūs*), to mark, *nōtātiō*, marking; *noscērē* (*nōtūs*), to take cognizance, *nōtiō*, taking cognizance; *obligārē* (*obligātūs*), to bind, *obligātiō*, engagement; *occūpārē* (*occūpātūs*), to seize, *occūpātiō*, seizing, business; *ōrārē* (*ōrātūs*), to speak, *ōrātiō*, speech; *partīrē* (*partītūs*), to divide, *partītiō*, division; *pētērē* (*pētītūs*), to seek, *pētītiō*, seeking; *pōtārē* (*pōtātūs* or *pōtūs*), to drink, *pōtātiō* or *pōtiō*, drinking, a draught; *prōbārē* (*prōbātūs*), to test, *prōbātiō*, testing; *prōvōcārē* (*prōvōcātūs*), to challenge, *prōvōcātiō*, challenge; *respirārē* (*respirātūs*), to breathe, *respirātiō*, breathing; *restītūrē* (*restītūtūs*), to restore, *restītūtiō*, restoration; *sālūtārē* (*sālūtātūs*), to greet, *sālūtātiō*, greeting; *sīmūlārē* (*sīmūlātūs*), to pretend, *sīmūlātiō*, pretense; *cognoscērē* (*cognītūs*), to learn by inquiry, *cognītiō*, knowledge; *ēdērē* (*ēdītūs*), to give out, to publish, *ēdītiō*, publishing; *pōnērē* (*pōsītūs*), to place, *pōsītiō*, placing; *rēri* (*rātūs*), to reckon, *rātiō*, a reckoning, an account; *sēdirē* (*sēdītūs*), to go apart, *sēdītiō*, sedition; *stārē* (*stātūs*), to stand, *stātiō*, a post; *sūperstārē* (*sūperstītūs*), to stand over in awe, *sūperstītiō*, superstition.

In like manner nouns are formed from:

*āgērē* (*actūs*), to act; *afficērē* (*affectūs*), to have the mind disposed towards; *augērē* (*auctūs*), to sell; *āvertērē* (*āversūs*), to turn away; *cāpērē* (*captūs*), to take; *cāvērē* (*cautūs*), to avoid; *comprēhendērē* (*comprēhensūs*), to grasp; *concedērē* (*concessūs*), to grant; *conclūdērē* (*conclūsūs*), to shut in; *construērē* (*constructūs*), to build; *contrāhērē* (*contractūs*), to draw together; *dēficērē* (*dēfectūs*), to fall away, to revolt; *dicērē* (*dictūs*), to say; *distinguērē* (*distinctūs*), to separate; *figērē* (*fictūs*), to invent; *imprimērē* (*impressūs*), to impress; *invenīrē* (*inventūs*), to come upon, to find; *mānērē* (*mansūs*), to stay, to dwell; *mittērē* (*missūs*), to let go, to send; *mōvērē* (*mōtūs*), to move; *offendērē* (*offensūs*), to stumble, to offend; *pendērē* (*pensūs*), to pay; *percipērē* (*perceptūs*), to seize entirely, to understand; *rēficērē*

(*rēfectūs*), to restore, to refresh; *scribĕrĕ* (*scriptūs*), to write; *sĕcĕdĕrĕ* (*sĕcessūs*), to go apart, to withdraw; *sĕcārĕ* (*sectūs*), to cut; *sĕdĕrĕ* (*sessūs*), to sit; *tangĕrĕ* (*tactūs*), to touch; *vidĕrĕ* (*visūs*), to see.

### Stems in -or-. 117, 1.

*Attached to the verb stem or to the present stem.*

*āmārĕ*, to love, *āmōr*, love; *ardĕrĕ*, to glow, *ardōr*, glow; *candĕrĕ*, to shine clearly; *candōr*, clearness; *clāmārĕ*, to shout, *clāmōr*, a shout, a noise; *dōlĕrĕ*, to suffer, *dōlōr*, pain; *errārĕ*, to wander, *errōr*, wandering; *fāvĕrĕ*, to favor, *fāvōr*, favor; *fervĕrĕ*, to boil, *fervōr*, boiling heat; *horrĕrĕ*, to shudder, *horrōr*, a shudder.

In like manner form nouns from :

*languĕrĕ*, to be faint; *liquĕrĕ*, to be fluid; *pallĕrĕ*, to be pale; *rīgĕrĕ*, to be stiff; *splendĕrĕ*, to be bright; *squālĕrĕ*, to be dirty; *stūpĕrĕ*, to be amazed; *terrĕrĕ*, to frighten; *tīmĕrĕ*, to be afraid; *torpĕrĕ*, to be numb; *trēmĕrĕ*, to quake; *tūmĕrĕ*, to swell; *vīgĕrĕ*, to be strong.

### Stems in -or-. 117, 2.

*Attached to the supine stem.*

These are very numerous, and are formed on the same stems as those in -ion.

Some others are added here :

*audĭrĕ* (*audītūs*), to hear, *audītōr*, a hearer; *compĕtĕrĕ* (*compĕtītūs*), to seek together, *compĕtītōr*, a rival; *creārĕ* (*creātūs*), to create, *creātōr*, a creator; *glādiārĭ* (*glādiātūs*), to use the sword, *glādiātōr*, a swordman (this verb does not occur in classical Latin; it was formed from the stem *glādiō-* of *glādiūs*, a sword); *gūbernārĕ* (*gūbernātūs*), to steer, *gūbernātōr*, a helmsman, a governor; *impĕrārĕ* (*impĕrātūs*), to command, *impĕrātōr*, a commander; *laudārĕ* (*laudātūs*), to praise, *laudātōr*, a panegyrist; *mōdĕrārĕ* (*mōdĕrātūs*),

to manage, **mōdērātōr**, a manager; **narrārē** (**narrātūs**), to tell, **narrātōr**, one who tells; **nēgōtiārē** (**nēgōtiātūs**), to do business, **nēgōtiātōr**, a dealer; **crēdērē** (**crēdītūs**), to trust, **crēdītōr**, a leader; **dēbērē** (**dēbītūs**), to owe, **dēbītōr**, a debtor; **censērē** (**censūs**), to judge, **censōr**, a valuer, a critic; **docērē** (**doctūs**), to teach, **doctōr**, a teacher, a learned man; **ducērē** (**ductūs**), to lead, **ductōr**, a leader; **pascērē** (**pastūs**), to feed sheep, **pastōr**, a shepherd; **pingērē** (**pictūs**), to paint, **pictōr**, a painter; **possidērē** (**possessūs**), to possess, **possessōr**, one who possesses; **prōfitērī** (**prōfessūs**), to teach, **prōfessōr**, a public teacher; **rēcīpērē** (**rēceptūs**), to receive, **rēceptōr**, a receiver; **rēgērē** (**rectūs**), to rule, **rectōr**, a ruler; **rumpērē** (**ruptūs**), to break, **ruptōr**, a breaker; **scribērē** (**scriptūs**), to write, **scriptōr**, a writer; **sculpērē** (**sculptūs**), to engrave, **sculptōr**, an engraver; **spondērē** (**sponsūs**), to promise, **sponsōr**, a surety; **tuērī** (**tūtūs**), to protect, **tūtōr**, a guardian; **vincērē** (**victūs**), to conquer, **victōr**, a conqueror.

### Stems in -tric-. 117, 2.

Attached to the supine stem.

These are formed like stems in -or-.

**testārī** (**testātūs**), to make a will; **testātōr**, a man who makes a will; **testātrix**, a woman who makes a will.

### Stems in -tr- (N. -ter). 113.

These are attached to roots (Primary derivatives).

Root <b>pā-</b> , to beget,	<b>pātēr</b> , a father,	stem <b>pātr-</b>
“ <b>mā-</b> , to produce,	<b>mātēr</b> , a mother,	“ <b>mātr-</b>
“ <b>frā-</b> (= <b>fēr-</b> ),	<b>frātēr</b> , a brother,	“ <b>frātr-</b>

### Stems in -mentō- (N. **mentūm**). 117, 3.

**ālērē**, to nourish, **ālimentūm**, nourishment; **arguērē**, to prove, **argūmentūm**, proof; **complērē**, to fill, **complēmentūm**, a filling up; **dētērērē**, to wear away, **dētrīmentūm**, a loss by wear; **docērē**, to teach, **docūmentūm**, a lesson; **ēmōlērē**, to

*grind*, **ēmōlūmentū**m, *gain by grinding*; **expēriri**, *to test*, **expērimentū**m, *a test*; **fervērē**, *to boil*, **fermentū**m, *yeast*; **frangērē**, *to break*, **fragmentū**m, *a fragment*; **fundārē**, *to found*, **fundāmentū**m, *a groundwork*; **incītārē**, *to incite*, **incītāmentū**m, *an incentive*; **increscērē**, *to increase*, **incrēmentū**m, *increase*; **instruērē**, *to arrange*, **instrūmentū**m, *a means, an implement*; **mōvērē**, *to move*, **mōmentū**m, *motion*; **mōnērē**, *to remind*, **mōnūmentū**m, *a memorial*; **nūtrirē**, *to nourish*, **nūtrimentū**m, *nourishment*; **ornārē**, *to adorn*, **ornāmentū**m, *a decoration*; **pingērē**, *to paint*, **pigmentū**m, *paint*; **sēcārē**, *to cut*, **segmentū**m, *a strip*; **tēgērē**, *to cover*, **tegūmentū**m, *a covering*; **testārī**, *to make a will*, **testāmentū**m, *a will*; **torquērē**, *to hurl*, **tormentū**m, *an engine for hurling*.

**Stems in -mīn- (N. -mēn).** 117, 3.

**abdērē**, *to conceal*, **abdōmēn** (that which conceals), *the abdomen*; **discernērē**, *to discriminate*, **discrīmēn**, *a distinction*; **lūcērē**, *to shine*, **lūmēn**, *a light*; **noscērē**, *to know*, **nōmēn**, *a name*; **spēcērē**, *to see*, **spēcīmēn**, *an example*.

**Stems in -cūlō- (N. -cūlūm).** 117, 3.

**rēceptārē**, *to receive*, **rēceptācūlūm**, *a magazine*; **spectārē**, *to gaze*, **spēctācūlūm**, *a sight*; **spīrārē**, *to breathe*, **spīrācūlūm**, *a breathing hole*; **tābernā-**, *a hut*, **tābernācūlūm**, *a tent*; **vincīrē**, *to bind*, **vincūlūm**, *a bond*.

**Stems in -ūrā-** 117, 4.

**āpērīrē** (**āpertūs**), *to open*, **āpertūrā**, *an opening*; **armārē** (**armātūs**), **armātūrā**, *equipment*; **cāpērē** (**captūs**), *to take*, **captūrā**, *seizing*; **conjiēcērē** (**conjectūs**), *to throw together*, *to guess*, **conjectūrā**, *a guess*; **cōlērē** (**cultūs**), *to cultivate*, **cultūrā**, *cultivation*; **jungērē** (**junctūs**), *to join*, **junctūrā**, *a joining, a point in time*; **littērā-**, *a letter*, **littērātūrā**, *writing*; **mētīrī** (**mensūs**), *to measure*, **mensūrā**, *a measure*; **nascī** (**nātūs**), *to be born*, **nātūrā**, *that which exists, nature*; **prēmērē** (**pressūs**), *to press*, **pressūrā**, *pressure*; **scribērē** (**scriptūs**),



to write, **scriptūrā**, *writing*; **sēpēlirē** (**sēpultūs**), to bury, **sēpultūrā**, *burial*; **stārē** (**stātūs**), to stand, **stātūrā**, *stature*; **struērē** (**structūs**), to build, **structūrā**, *a building*; **tempērārē** (**tempērātūs**), to bring into proportion, **tempērātūrā**, *temperature, due proportion*; **texērē** (**textūs**), to weave, **textūrā**, *a web*; **tondērē** (**tonsūs**), to shave, **tonsūrā**, *a shaving*; **ungērē** (**unctūs**), to anoint, **unctūrā**, *an anointing*; **ūtī** (**ūsūs**), to use, **ūsūrā**, *use, interest in money*.

### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

1. When a suffix beginning with a consonant is added to a stem ending in a short vowel, that vowel is sometimes changed to another vowel more easily sounded before the initial letter of the suffix. For instance, from 117, Exercises, I. we have the following:

From **calci-**, **calcūlūs**; **glōbbō-**, **glōbbūlūs**; **mōdō-**, **mōdūlūs**; **scrūpō-**, **scrūpūlūs**; **ventō-**, **ventūlūs**; **capsā-**, **capsūlā**; **formā-**, **formūlā**.

In all these the suffix begins with **l**, before which **u** is easily sounded.

2. When a suffix beginning with a vowel is added to a stem ending in a short vowel (**ā**, **ō**), the stem vowel is usually dropped. For instance, from I. we have:

From **nōtā-**, **notāriūs**; **cālendā-**, **cālendāriūm**; **grānō-**, **grānāriūm**.

3. A suffix attached to the present stem of a verb may use the nude stem (the stem without the final vowel) or the stem including the stem vowel. If the suffix begins with a vowel, the nude stem of the verb is used; as **stūdērē**, **stūdiūm** (117, Exercises, III.). If the suffix begins with a consonant, the stem vowel

of the verb is usually retained; as *ornārē*, *ornāmentū* (p. 149). The stem vowel *e* or *i* is often changed before the suffix for convenience of articulation.

Thus, from *docērē*, *dōcūmentū*; *ēmōlīrē*, *ēmōlūmentū*; *tēgērē*, *tēgūmentū*; *spēcērē*, *spēcīmēn*.

4. Some verb stems have two forms: *dētērērē* (*dētrī-*), *dētrimentū*; *discernērē* (*discri-*), *discrimēn*; *lūcēre* (*lū-*), *lūmēn*; *pingērē* (*pīg-*), *pīgmentū* (p. 149); *torquēre* (*tōr-*), *tormentū*; *mōvērē* (*mō-*), *mōmentū*; *noscērē* (*nō-*), *nōmēn*.

5. The final consonant of a nude stem is often assimilated (122) before a consonant following: *sēcārē*, *segmentū*.

6. Sometimes a derivative is formed from the stem of a noun, just as if there were a verb with that stem: *tābernā-*, *tābernācūlū*; *littērā-*, *littērātūrā*.

7. English words are formed directly from the stems of nearly all of these Latin derivative nouns.

1) Very often the English merely uses the Latin nude stem. Sometimes a short vowel in the penult of the stem is cut out, and often the English word is spelled with a final silent *e*. Thus we have *circle* from *circūlō-*, *globule* from *glōbbūlō-*, *scruple* from *scrūpūlō-*, *capsule* from *capsūlā-*, *appetite* from *appētītū-*, *oblivion* from *oblīviōn-*, *ardor* from *ardōr-*, *argument* from *argūmentō-*, *receptacle* from *rēceptācūlō-*, *aperture* from *āpertūrā-*.

2) When the nude stem ends in *i*, this is usually spelled *y* in English. Thus we have *notary* from *nōtāriō-*, *aviary* from *āviāriō-*, *fallacy* from *fallāciā-*. From *cālendāriō-*, however, we have *calendar*, instead

of *calendary*, as if making a second nude stem by dropping *i*. *Concord* is formed in the same way from *concordiā*. *Usury*, from *ūsūrā*, is formed as if from a stem in *-iā*.

3) A nude stem ending in *-ti* has a different change in English. *-t* becomes *c*. *i* is sometimes written *y*, as in *clemency*, from *clēmentīā*, but is usually dropped, a silent *e* being written after the *c* (thus giving *c* the sound of *s*), as in *avarice*, from *āvaritīā*.

This occurs because these words come to us through the French. But French originally was only a sort of colloquial Latin, such as was spoken by people who could neither read nor write. Of course, then, they made many changes in their ways of pronouncing Latin words. And among these changes was the slipping in of an *s*-sound after *t* in final syllables of stems: thus, the Latin nude stem *clēmentī-*, of *clēmentīā*, *mercifulness*, became *clēmentsī*. But *t* before *s* is not easy to pronounce, and soon dropped away, leaving the word *clēmensī* (spelled in French *clemencie*). We use this French word, spelling it *clemency* (*y* being the customary English equivalent of French *ie* — as in *Mary*, for the French *Marie*).

4) Stems in *-tāt*, when used as an English word, lost the final *t*, *y* being written instead of *a*. Thus we have *affinity*, from *affinitāt*.

This change is also due to the French, — the Latin stem *affinitāt* becoming the French *affinité*, which we use with the spelling *affinity*.

5) Stems in *-tūdīn* also lose the last two letters in English, silent *e* being written at the end. Thus we have *lassitude* from *lassītūdīn*, *latitude* from *lātītūdīn*. The former is really the nominative form *lassītūdō* treated as a stem (see 134).

6) Several words in the Latin nominative are used without change as English words: **calcŭlŭs**, **mōdŭlŭs**, **formŭlă**, **ōdiŭm**, **praemiŭm**, **abdōmēn**, **spēcīmēn**, **vincŭlŭm**, and others.

A **calcŭlŭs** is a *pebble*, and is used in medicine as the technical name for a little stone sometimes secreted in some parts of the body, for example, in the bladder. But as pebbles were anciently used in reckoning (just as children and savages even now use their fingers), **calcŭlŭs** came to mean any method of computation, and so is used now as the name of certain branches of mathematics. It is from the word in this sense that we have the words *calculate*, *calculation*. A **vincŭlŭm** is something used to *bind*, — a *bond*. The word is used in algebra of a sign which binds together several expressions.



### STUDY XXXIII.—THE DERIVATION OF LATIN ADJECTIVES.

118. From noun stems.

1. The following suffixes denote *full of*, *abounding in*, or *supplied with* what the noun denotes:

-ōsŏ- (N. -ōsŭs, ŭm, ŏ)    -lentŏ- (N. -lentŭs, ŭm, ŏ)  
-tŏ- (N. -tŭs, ŭm, ŏ)    -lent- (N. -lens)

Adjectives in -ōsŭs are very numerous. There are said to be some five hundred of them in Latin; *e.g.*

**cōpiă**, *abundance*                      **cōpiŏsŭs**, *full of abundance, copious*  
**verbŏ-** (N. -um), *a word*    **verbŏsŭs**, *full of words, verbose*

Other examples are as follows :

<b>jūs-</b> , <i>right</i>	<b>justūs</b> , <i>abounding in right, just</i>
<b>pestī-</b> (N. -is), <i>pest</i>	<b>pestilent-</b> (N. -lens), <i>pestilential</i>
<b>fraudī-</b> (N. fraus), <i>fraud</i>	<b>fraudulentūs</b> , <i>fraudulent</i>

2. The following suffixes denote the *material* of which anything is made:

**-eō-** (N. -eūs)    **-āceō-** (N. -āceūs)    **-nō-** (N. -nūs)

<b>ignī-</b> (N. -is), <i>fire</i>	<b>igneō-</b> (N. -eūs), <i>fiery</i>
<b>crētā-</b> (N. -a), <i>chalk</i>	<b>crētāceō-</b> (N. -āceūs), <i>chalky</i>
<b>ādāmant-</b> (N. -mas), <i>diamond</i>	<b>ādāmantinō-</b> (N. -nūs), <i>made of diamond, hard as diamond.</i>

3. The following suffixes denote a *quality belonging to or derived from* something:

<b>-cō-</b> (N. -cūs)	<b>-iō-</b> (N. -iūs)	<b>-tīmō-</b> (N. -tīmūs)
<b>-tīcō-</b> (N. -tīcūs)	<b>-āriō-</b> (N. -āriūs)	<b>-ītīmō-</b> (N. -ītīmūs)
<b>-āno-</b> (N. -ānūs)	<b>-ālī-</b> (N. -ālīs)	
<b>-īno-</b> (N. -īnūs)	<b>-īlī-</b> (N. -īlīs)	

<b>cīvī-</b> (N. -is), <i>a citizen</i>	<b>cīvīcūs</b> , <i>belonging to a citizen</i>
<b>rūs-</b> (N. -rūs), <i>country</i>	<b>rustīcūs</b> , <i>belonging to the country</i>
<b>āēr-</b> (N. āēr), <i>air</i>	<b>āēriūs</b> , <i>in the air</i>
<b>hōnōr-</b> (N. hōnōr), <i>honor</i>	<b>hōnōrāriūs</b> , <i>of honor</i>
<b>māri-</b> (N. mārē), <i>sea</i>	<b>mārītīmūs</b> , <i>belonging to the sea</i>
<b>mēridiēs-</b> (N. -iēs), <i>midday</i>	<b>mēridiānūs</b> , <i>of midday</i>
<b>cānī-</b> (N. -is), <i>dog</i>	<b>cānīnūs</b> , <i>belonging to a dog</i>
<b>ānimā-</b> (N. the same), <i>life</i>	<b>ānimālīs</b> , <i>having life</i>
<b>servō-</b> (N. -ūs), <i>slave</i>	<b>servīlīs</b> , <i>slavish</i>
<b>lēg-</b> (N. lex), <i>law</i>	<b>lēgītīmūs</b> , <i>lawful</i>

4. The following suffixes also denote *belonging to or derived from*, but are used to form adjectives from proper nouns :

-ānō- (N. -ānūs)	-iācō- (N. -iācūs)
-iānō- (N. -iānūs)	-icō- (N. -icūs)
-inō- (N. -inūs)	-iō- (N. -iūs)
-ēō- (N. -ēūs)	-ensī- (N. -ensīs)
-āt- (N. -ās)	-iensī (N. iensīs)

<b>Rōmā-</b> (N. Rōmā), <i>Rome</i>	<b>Rōmānūs</b> , <i>of Rome</i>
<b>Cicērōn-</b> (N. Cicērō)	<b>Cicērōniānūs</b> , <i>Ciceronian</i>
<b>Lātiō-</b> (N. Lātiūm), <i>Latium</i> (The country near Rome)	<b>Lātinūs</b> , <i>Latin</i>
<b>Cōrīnthō-</b> (N. Cōrīnthūs), <i>Corinth</i>	<b>Cōrīnthiācūs</b> , <i>of Corinth</i>
<b>Brītanīā-</b> (N. the same), <i>Britain</i>	<b>Brītanīcūs</b> , <i>British</i>
<b>Cōrīnthō-</b> (N. Cōrīnthūs), <i>Corinth</i>	<b>Cōrīnthiūs</b> , <i>Corinthian</i>
<b>Ēpicūrō-</b> (N. Ēpicūrūs), <i>Epicurus</i> (The philosopher)	<b>Ēpicūrēūs</b> , <i>Epicurean</i>
<b>Sicīliā-</b> (N. the same), <i>Sicily</i>	<b>Sicīliensīs</b> , <i>Sicilian</i>
<b>Āthēnā-</b> (N. pl. Āthēnae), <i>Athens</i>	<b>Āthēniensīs</b> , <i>Athenian</i>

## 119. From verb stems and roots.

The suffixes are:

-dō- (N. -dūs)	-uō- (N. -uūs)	-āo- (N. -ax)
-ūlō- (N. -ūlūs)	-ivō- (N. -ivūs)	-icō- (N. -icūs)
-ī- (N. -īis)	-bīlī- (N. -bīlīs)	

1. The suffixes with stem ending in *-i-* denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense:

āmārē, <i>to love</i>	āmābīlis, <i>lovely, amiable</i>
fācērē, <i>to do</i>	fācīlis, <i>easy to do, facile</i>

2. The suffix *-āo-* denotes a *tendency*, usually a faulty one:

pugnārē, <i>to fight</i>	pugnax, <i>pugnacious</i>
--------------------------	---------------------------

3. The other endings have about the same meaning as the present participle (*i.e.* they denote the act or state without asserting it):

<b>mēdēri</b> , to heal	<b>mēdicūs</b> , healing, medical
<b>āmārē</b> , to love	<b>āmīcūs</b> , loving, friendly
<b>tīmērē</b> , to fear	<b>tīmīdūs</b> , fearing, timid

## EXERCISES.

The student should note the suffix in the following adjectives, and its force in deriving the meaning of the adjective from that of the stem. Thus, **ācīdūs** = **acē** + **do** + **s**. The present stem **acē** means *to be sour*; the suffix **dō** denotes the state without asserting it; **s** is the case ending. Hence **ācīdūs** means *sour*, or *acid*.

The phonetic changes are : **ē** in the stem becomes **i** (for ease of pronunciation) and **ō** in the suffix becomes **ū** before the case ending.

**ācērē**, to be sour, **ācīdūs**, sour, acid; **ārērē**, to be dry, **ārīdūs**, dry, arid; **candērē**, to shine, **candīdūs**, shining, candid; **fervērē**, to glow, **fervīdūs**, glowing, fervid; **flōrērē**, to blossom, **flōrīdūs**, flowery, florid; **frīgērē**, to be cold, **frīgīdūs**, cold; **horrērē**, to shudder, **horrīdus**, fearful, horrid; **languērē**, to be feeble, **languīdūs**, feeble, languid; **liquērē**, to be liquid, **liquīdūs**, liquid; **livērē**, to be lead colored, **livīdūs**, lead colored, livid; **lūcērē**, to shine, **lūcīdūs**, clear, lucid; **pallērē**, to be pale, **pallīdūs**, pale, pallid; **plācērē**, to be pleasing, **plācīdūs**, pleased, placid; **rīgērē**, to be stiff, **rīgīdūs**, stiff, rigid; **sordērē**, to be dirty, **sordīdūs**, dirty, sordid; **squālērē**, to be filthy, **squālīdūs**, filthy, squalid; **stūpērē**, to be amazed, **stūpīdūs**, amazed, stupid; **tēpērē**, to be warm, **tēpīdūs**, warm, tepid; **torpērē**, to be benumbed, **torpīdūs**, benumbed, torpid; **torrērē**, to burn, **torrīdūs**, burning, torrid; **tūmērē**, to swell, **tūmīdūs**, swelling; **turgērē**, to be inflated, **turgīdūs**, inflated, turgid; **vālērē**, to be strong, **vālīdūs**, strong, valid; **hūmērē**, to be damp, **hūmīdūs**, damp, humid; **ambīgērē**, to act on both sides, **ambīguūs**, on both sides, ambiguous; **assīdērē**, to sit down by, **assīduūs**, constant, assiduous; **congruērē**, to fit, **congruūs**, suitable, congruous; **contīgērē**, to touch, **con-**

**tīguūs**, touching, contiguous; **contīnērē**, to hold together, **continuūs**, holding together, continuous; **innōcērē**, to be harmless, **innōcuūs**, harmless, innocuous; **prōmiscērē**, to mix, **prēmīscuūs**, mixed, promiscuous.

The suffix **-ivō-** is attached to the supine stem.

**āgērē**, to act, **actūs**, **activūs**, active; **cāpērē**, to catch, **cap-tūs**, **captivūs**, captured, captive; **fūgērē**, to flee, **fugītūs**, **fūgītivūs**, runaway, fugitive; **nascī**, to be born, **nātūs**, **nātivūs**, born; **vōvērē**, to vow, **vōtūs**, **vōtivūs**, vowed; **nōmīnārē**, to name, **nōmīnātūs**, **nōmīnātivūs**, nominative (in like manner the other names of cases).

**bībērē**, to drink, **bībūlūs**, bibulous, apt to drink; **crēdērē**, to believe, **crēdūlūs**, apt to believe, credulous; **garrīrē**, to prattle, **garrūlūs**, prattling, garrulous; **pendērē**, to hang, **pendūlūs**, hanging, pendulous; **quērī**, to complain, **quērūlūs**, complaining, querulous; **trēmērē**, to quiver, **trēmūlūs**, quivering, tremulous; **audērē**, to dare, **audax**, daring; **cāpērē**, to catch, **cāpax**, capacious; **efficērē**, to work out, **efficax**, effectual, efficacious; **fallērē**, to deceive, **fallax**, deceptive; **lōquī**, to talk, **lōquax**, talkative; **pugnārē**, to fight, **pugnax**, quarrelsome; **rāpērē**, to seize, **rāpax**, rapacious; **tēnērē**, to hold, **tēnax**, tenacious; **vīvērē**, to live, **vīvax**, lively, vivacious; **vōrārē**, to devour, **vōrax**, voracious; **āgērē**, to do, **āgīlīs**, active; **fācērē**, to do, **fācīlīs**, easy; **frangērē**, to break, **frāgīlīs**, frail; **ūtī**, to use, **ūtīlīs**, useful; **crēdērē**, to believe, **crēdībīlīs**, credible; **horrērē**, to shudder, **horrībīlīs**, exciting a shudder; **intellēgērē**, to understand, **intelligībīlīs**, intelligible; **stārē**, to stand, **stābīlīs**, steady, stable; **terrērē**, to frighten, **terrībīlīs**, frightful; **admīrārī**, to wonder, **admīrābīlīs**, wonderful; **affārī**, to address, **affābīlīs**, affable.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

1. English words are made from Latin adjectives in several ways. Quite often the nude stem is used





(i.e. the stem without its vowel). A slight change in spelling the final syllable is common; e.g. the nude stem of *cōpiōsūs*, full of abundance, is *cōpiōs-*, which in English becomes *copious*. *Verbōs-*, full of words, we spell *verbose*. The latter seems the more natural way of spelling the word, as the final *e* is so commonly used in English, especially when we wish to show that the preceding vowel has not its short sound; e.g. *hat*, *hate*. But the suffix *ous*, used instead of *ose*, is explained by the fact that the words in which it occurs come to us not directly from the Latin, but from a French word which itself was derived from the Latin. The words in *ose*, on the other hand, come directly from the Latin. In this way we see at once the history of such words as *generous*, *jocose*, *pernicious*, *odious*.

2. When the nude stem ends in two consonants, we do not need to change the spelling. Thus we have *just*, *pestilent*, *fraudulent* (see the endings).

3. The Latin suffix *-bilis*, when made nude, becomes *-bil-*. We do not pronounce the *i*, and so have dropped it out, a silent *e* being added. Hence we have *affable*, *terrible*, and the like.



#### STUDY XXXIV.—THE DERIVATION OF LATIN VERBS.

120. Latin verbs are formed either (1) directly from roots, (2) from noun or adjective stems, or (3) from verb stems.

1. Verbs formed from roots have consonant stems. The root used as a verb stem is sometimes used unchanged as a present stem (31, 2), sometimes is modified (86, 1, 2, 3), and sometimes adds a vowel (i, e, a, 86, 3).

Root.	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Part.	
căn-	cănō	cănēre	cēcīnī	cantūs	<i>sing</i>
rūp-	rumpō	rumpēre	rūpī	ruptūs	<i>break</i>
carp-	carpō	carpēre	carpsī	carptūs	<i>pluck</i>
cēr- (= crē)	crescō	crescēre	crēvī	crētūs	<i>increase</i>
ăg-	ăgō	ăgēre	ăgī	actūs	<i>drive</i>
mord-	mordeō	mordēre	momordī	morsūs	<i>bite</i>
căp-	căpiō	căpēre	căpī	captūs	<i>catch</i>
vīd-	vīdeō	vīdēre	vīdī	vīsūs	<i>see</i>
jūv-	jūvō	jūvāre	jūvī	jūtūs	<i>aid</i>

2. Those formed from noun or adjective stems are very numerous. They comprise a large majority of verbs with stem in ā, and a great number of those with stem in ē. There are also some with stem in ī.

These verb stems are formed by attaching the verb suffix, ā, ē, or ī, to the nude stem of the noun or adjective. The perfect and supine stems are formed by adding v and t to the verb stem.

ănimă-, *breath*, ănimăre, *to fill with breath*, ănimăvī, ănimătūs

nōtă-, *a mark*, nōtăre, *to mark, to count*

damnō- (N. -ūm), *loss*, damnăre, *to condemn*

dōmīnō- (N. -ūs), *lord*, dōmīnăre, *to play the lord, to rule*

dōnō- (N. -ūm), *gift*, dōnăre, *to present*

lōcō- (N. -ūs), *place*, lōcăre, *to place*

nēgōtiō- (N. -ūm), *business*, nēgōtiăre, *to do business*

nūmērō- (N. -ūs), *number*, nūmērăre, *to count*

rădiō- (N. -ūs), *ray*, rădiăre, *to shoot out rays*

**ventilō-** (N. -ūs), *a little breeze*, **ventilārē**, *to make a little breeze*

**aliēnō-** (N. -ūs, -ūm, -ā), *belonging to another*, **aliēnārē**, *to alienate*

**lācērō-** (N. -ēr, -ērūm, -ērā), *torn*, **lācērārē**, *to tear*

**libērō-** (N. -ēr, -ērūm, -ērā), *free*, **libērārē**, *to set free*

**dēcōr-** (N. dēcūs, neut.), *beauty*, **dēcōrārē**, *to decorate*

**nōmīn-** (N. nōmēn, neut.), *name*, **nōmīnārē**, *to name*

**ōs-** (N. ōs, neut.), *mouth*, **ōrārē**, *to speak*

**flōs-** (N. flōs, neut.), *a flower*, **flōrērē**, *to flourish*

**servō-** (N. -ūs), *a slave*, **servīrē**, *to be a slave*

**vestī-** (N. -īs), *garment*, **vestīrē**, *to clothe*

3. Verbs formed from the stems of other verbs are of several classes.

*a. Frequentatives* denote repeated or continued action. Their stem is formed by adding **ā** to the supine stem of the other verb.

**cānērē**, *sing*, **cantūs**, **cantārē**, *to sing often*, **cantāvi**, **cantātūs**

**cāpērē**, *to catch*, **captūs**, **captārē**, *to catch at*

**cēdērē**, *to yield*, **cessūs**, **cessārē**, *to cease, to loiter*

**consūlērē**, *to consult*, **consultūs**, **consultārē**, *to deliberate*

**dīcērē**, *to say*, **dictūs**, **dictārē**, *to say frequently, to dictate*  
(in both senses)

**hābērē**, *to have*, **hābītūs**, **hābītārē**, *to have often, to dwell*

**pellērē**, *to strike*, **pulsūs**, **pulsārē**, *to beat*

Sometimes in these derivatives the **t** of the supine stem has **i** preceding it.

**āgērē**, *to do*, **actūs** (= ag-tūs), **āgītārē**, *to shake*

*b. Inchoatives* denote the beginning of an action. Their stem is formed by adding **-sc-** to the verb stem of the other verb.

**dicĕrĕ**, to say, **discĕrĕ** (= dic-sc-ĕre), to learn (i.e. by repetition)  
**irĕrĕ**, to be angry, **irasci**, to grow angry  
**creārĕ**, to make, **crescĕrĕ**, to grow

There are other derivative endings for Latin verbs, but not many of them form English derivatives.

#### REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

English words are made from Latin verb stems in various ways.

1. Sometimes the verb stem (nude) or the present stem (nude) is used without change (145, 2): *carp*, from **carpĕrĕ**, to nibble, to pluck; *damn*, from **damnārĕ**, to condemn; *cede*, from **cĕdĕrĕ**, to yield (here the silent *e* is added).

2. We recognize not a few English words which are Latin present participle stems (145, 3): *agent*, from **āgĕrĕ**, to do; *radiant*, from **rādiārĕ**, to shoot rays; *crescent*, from **crescĕrĕ**, to grow. The meaning of these words is plain. An *agent* is one who does something, sometimes acting for another person. We call a person's face *radiant* when it seems to shine with joy. And the moon is *crescent* when it is new (i.e. when it is just growing larger).

3. The supine stems of verbs we find in a large number of English words (145, 1). The student will see the meaning of the following words, in which appear supine stems of verbs cited in Study XXXI.: *incantation*, *rupture*, *act*, *morsel*, *capture*, *vision*, *notation*, *location*, *locate*, *nominate*, *oration*, *agitation*.

There are swarms of English words in *ate* and *ation* which come from Latin supine stems. These will be given in Part IV.

### STUDY XXXV.—THE FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS IN LATIN.

121. In forming derivative words it has been seen that the process has been merely to modify a stem by a prefix, by a change in the body of the stem, or by a suffix. And in each of these three cases the modifying part is not itself a stem. Thus, *pugnax* (= *pugnacs*), *apt to fight*, is formed from *pŭg* + *n* + *ac* + *s*. *pŭg* is a verb stem, *n* is the suffix which forms the present stem, *ac* is the suffix forming a derivative adjective stem, *s* is the declension ending.

But words may also be formed in Latin by joining two stems, or a stem and a root. *tŭbĭcĕn*, *trumpeter*, is formed from the noun stem *tŭbā*-, *a trumpet*, and the verb stem *cān*-, *sing, play* (the vowel changes will be explained later). So it appears that *tŭbĭcĕn* means *one who plays on a trumpet*.

In English we do very little with stems, which play so prominent a part in Latin; and our compound words are formed merely by uniting two words. Thus, *horse* + *man* = *horseman*; *blue* + *eyed* = *blue-eyed*. The same thing is done occasionally in Latin: *rēs publicā*, *the public business, the republic*; *bĕnĕ* + *fācĕrĕ* = *bĕnĕ-fācĕrĕ*, *to do good* (in like manner, *bĕnĕdicĕrĕ*, *to speak well*; *mālĕdicĕrĕ*, *to speak ill*; *mālĕfācĕrĕ*, *to do ill*; *sātĭsfācĕrĕ*, *to satisfy*).

The last examples illustrate a great number of compounds, in which the first part is a particle (an adverb,

or a preposition in an adverbial sense), while the second part is the stem of an inflected word.

122. When the stems of inflected words are put together, there are apt to be some phonetic changes: **magnō + ānimō + s = magnānīmūs, great-souled.** The stem vowel *ō* in the first part is lost before a vowel: **āgrō + cōlā = āgrīcōlā, a farmer.** The stem vowel *ō* becomes *ī*.

We saw in **tūbīcēn** that the stem of the first part was **tūbā-**, the *ā* being changed to *ī*. This is a very common change in forming compounds. And *ī* is even added to a consonant stem: **pāc, peace, + fic, make, = pācificūs, peace-making.**

Also in **tūbīcēn** we see that the root vowel *ā* in the second part becomes *ē*. This also is common,—*ā* or *ē* becoming *ī*, *ae* (as in **frātrīcīdā**) becoming *ī*, *au* becoming *ō* or *ū*. *ā* sometimes becomes *ē* or *ū*.

The first part of a compound word is often a particle (101). But many particles end in a consonant. And if the second part of the compound begins with a consonant, there is usually a phonetic change. Thus, **īn, against, + pugnārē, to fight, = impugnārē, to fight against.** Here the lingual *n* becomes the corresponding labial *m* (5) before the labial *p* (by pronouncing **īnpugnārē** and **impugnārē** the student will see how much easier the latter is). This change is called *partial assimilation*.

An example of *complete assimilation* is **īrīdērē, to laugh at,** compounded of **īn + rīdērē.** In this word *n* is changed to the same letter as that following.

**123.** Compounds in which a preposition is the first part are very numerous in Latin. The following are illustrations:

**ā, āb, abs,** away (often meaning simply *not*): **abscondērě,** to hide away; **abnormīs,** not under rule, abnormal.

**ād,** to (towards, near), **accipērě,** to take to (oneself), to accept; **adjācērě,** to lie near, to be adjacent.

**antě,** before: **antēcědērě,** to go before.

**circū,** around: **circumvėnĭrě,** to come around.

**com** (= **cūm**), with, completely: **collōquĭ,** to talk with; **consumērě,** to take completely, to consume.

**dě,** away, from: **dědūcērě,** to draw from.

**ě,** **ex,** out of, thoroughly: **exōněrārě,** to unload; **efficērě,** to do thoroughly.

**in,** in, into, against: **immĭgrārě,** to move into; **impugnārě,** to fight against.

**intĕr,** between: **intervėnĭrě,** to come between.

**ōb,** in the way, against: **offerrě,** to bring in one's way, to offer; **opprimērě,** to press against, to oppress.

**pĕr,** through: **pĕrambŭlārě,** to walk through.

**post,** after: **postpōnērě,** to put after.

**prō** (**prōd**), forth, for: **prōhibērě,** to hold before (i.e. out of one's reach), to prohibit.

**sŭb,** under: **substituērě,** to put under (i.e. in place of), to substitute.

**trans,** across: **transgrĕdĭ,** to go across (e.g. to go across a line, hence, to transgress).

The following prepositions are never used except in compound words:

**ambĭ,** around (hence, on two sides): **ambĭtĭō,** a going around (e.g. going around for votes, hence, ambition).

**dĭs,** apart (sometimes merely *not*): **dĭstinērě,** to hold apart; **difficĭlĭs,** not easy.

**in,** not: **inĭmĭcŭs,** unfriendly.

**pōs** (post), *forth, near*: **possīdērē**, *to sit near, to possess.*

**rē** (rēd-), *back*: **rēcīnīs**, *leaning back.*

**sē** (sēd-), *apart*: **sēcēdērē**, *to go apart.*

**124.** Often Latin compounds consist of an adjective stem + a noun stem.

**bilinguis** (bi + linguā-), *with two tongues*; **triplex** (tri + plīc-), *threefold, triple*; **sēmībarbārus** (sēmī + barbārō-), *half barbarous*; **magnānimūs** (magnō + ānimō), *high souled*; **mēditerrāneūs** (mēdī + terrā-), *midland.*

**125.** Others consist of an object + a verb stem.

**āg-**, *do*: **fūmīgārē** (fūmō), *to make smoke, to fumigate*; **nāvīgārē** (nāvl), *to make a voyage.*

**caed-**, *kill*: **frātrīcīdā** (fratr-), *killer of a brother*; **hōmīcīdā** (hōm-, abbreviated for hōmīn-), *killer of a man*; **parrīcīdā** (par-, for patr-), *killer of a father.*

**cōl-**, *cultivate*: **āgrīcōlā** (āgrō-), *farmer.*

**dic-**, *say*: **jūdex** (stem jūdīc-, from jūs-), *judge, one who speaks, or decides, what is just.*

**fāc-**, *make*: **magnīfīcūs** (magnō-), *magnificent*; **pācīfīcūs** (pāc-), *peacemaking*; **sācrīfīciūm** (sācrō-), *sacrifice*; **signīfīcārē** (signō-), *make signs, signify.* For the phonetic change, see 122.

**fēr-**, *carry*: **vōcīfērārī** (vōc-), *to carry the voice, to shout.*

**frāg-**, *break*: **saxīfrāgūs** (saxō-), *stone crushing.*

**lōqu-**, *talk*: **grandīlōquūs** (grandō-), *talking big.*

**vōr-**, *eat*: **carnīvōrūs** (carn-), *flesh eating.*

**126.** Other compounds consist of an adverbial expression + a verb.

**dā-**, *give*: **mandārē** (mānū-), *to give into one's hands.*

**vōl-**, *wish*: **bēnēvōlūs** (bēnē), *well wishing*; **mālēvōlūs** (mālē), *ill wishing.*



## REMARKS ON DERIVATIVES.

Latin compounds are used in great numbers as English words. They can be properly explained, however, only as Latin words. To attempt the analysis of such an English word by resolving it at once into its parts is merely to put the cart before the horse. Sometimes students are taught, for instance, that *interruption* consists of the prefix *inter-*, meaning *between*, the root *rup*, to *break*, and the suffix *tion*, meaning *an act*. In truth, however, *interruption* is merely the stem of the Latin noun **interruptiō**. The stem is a compound of the preposition **intēr** and the noun stem **ruptiōn-**. The last is composed of the supine stem **rupt-** (from the verb stem **rūp**) + the suffix **-iōn-**, which denotes the *act* (117, 1).

*Benefactor* is obviously the noun denoting the agent (117, 2), from **bēnēfācērē**, to *do good*, as *malefactor* is from **mālēfācērē**, to *do ill*, and *satisfaction* from **sātisfācērē**, to *do enough*.

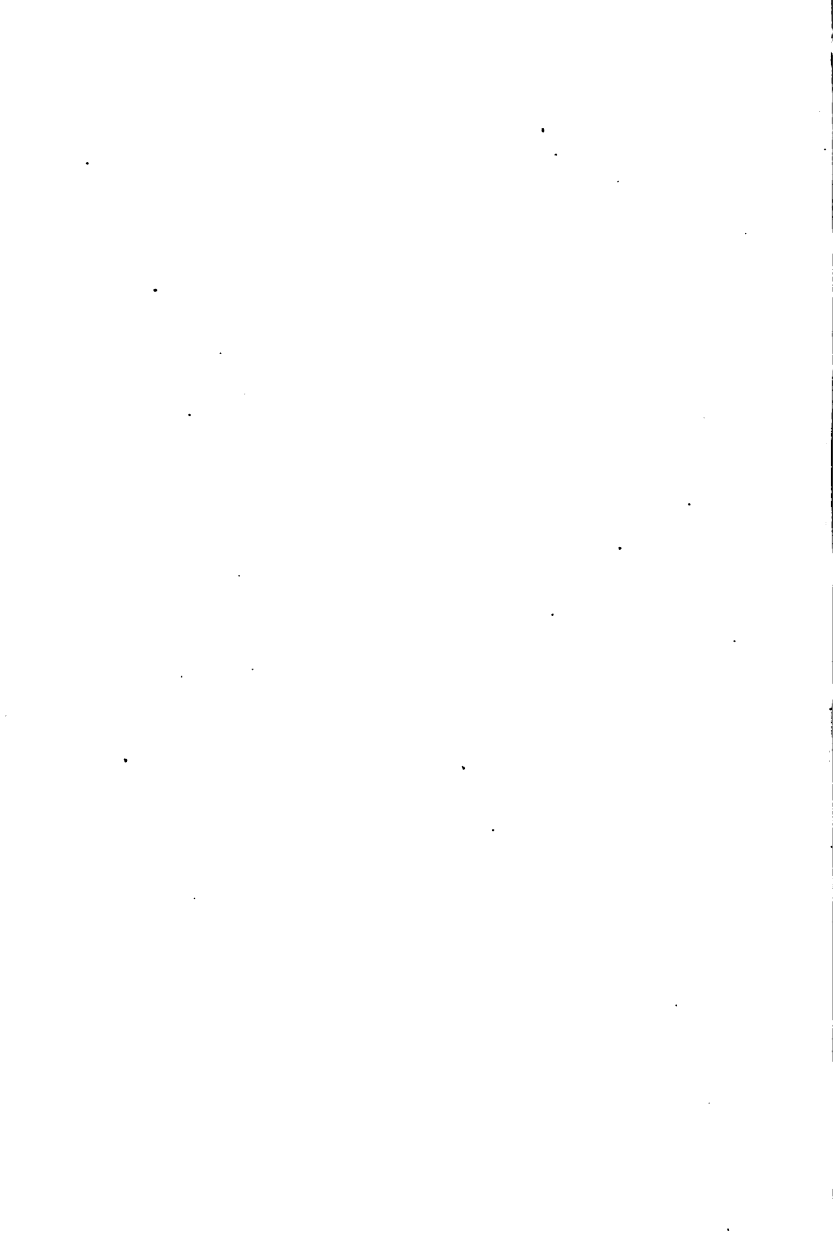
From **magnānīmūs**, *great souled*, we have *magnanimous*; **impugnārē**, to *fight against*, gives us *impugn*. The former word is merely the Latin nominative, with the last syllable adapted to our way of spelling. We are not accustomed to end words in the syllable *-us*, — we write *curious*, *specious*, *tortuous*, *anxious* (136). *Impugn* is the nude stem of the Latin verb, unchanged. This nude stem of a Latin verb (with or without silent *e* final) we find also in the words *abscond*, *consume*, *deduce*, *intervene*, *postpone*. Their meaning is found in the examples (145).

If we look at another compound Latin verb, *accipere*, to receive, we see that the English derivative is *accept* (145, 6 c). Here plainly the supine stem, instead of the nude present stem, is taken, but with exactly the same meaning. Notice *circumvent*, *exonerate*, *immigrate*, *oppress* (from *opprimere*), *prohibit*, *substitute*, *transgress*.

*Saxifragus* (stem *saxifrāgō*), *stone crushing*, is converted into the English *saxifrage*, by using the nude stem with final *e* silent. The saxifrage is a delicate plant which derives its name, as some say, because it grows in crevices of the rocks; more probably because it was once thought that if taken as a medicine it would break up a stone in the bladder.



**HOW ENGLISH WORDS ARE MADE  
FROM LATIN WORDS.**



## PART IV.

### HOW ENGLISH WORDS ARE MADE FROM LATIN WORDS.



#### PRELIMINARY.

127. It was explained briefly in the Introduction how it has come about that many words in English come from the Latin. When English people were accustomed to hear Latin spoken or to use written Latin, they would be quite apt to use Latin expressions in English discourse when there was no English word which exactly fitted. For instance, the English language from the fifth century to the eleventh was almost wholly German. But for about the last four hundred years of that time the church services were in Latin. Accordingly it was the most natural thing in the world for the priests in speaking of some part of the service to keep the familiar Latin term, rather than try to invent a new English word. And so came in such words as *altar*, *angel*, *font*, *mass*, *monk*, and *nun*, which are merely the nude stems, little altered, of the Latin nouns *altāre*, *angēlus*, *fons* (= *font*-), *missā*, *mōnāchūs*, *nunnā*. As has been said (p. xii),

also, Latin was very generally used in conversation, books, and legal documents until within the last two centuries. Accordingly, in the course of all these ages, a large number of Latin words have been adopted into our language.

Now, in continuing to use a Latin word, one would not be likely to take pains about its inflection. The various forms of the noun, verb, and the like, would be adapted to a Latin sentence, but not at all to an English sentence. So the tendency would be to use some one form of the Latin word without change, and if it should be inflected, to use English forms. Thus we use for the possessive case *nun's*, not the genitive *nunnae*.

But what one form would be the most natural to use? Obviously that which was most frequently heard in Latin.

If that happened to be some particular case of a noun, for instance, it might be retained; or, at first retained in full, gradually its ending would drop; e.g. *axis*, and *angel* (from *angēlūm*).

But it is easy to see that the Latin form most commonly heard would not be any particular case of a noun, or any particular mood, tense, etc., of a verb. It would be the *nude stem*. Thus, if one were familiar with all the forms of *angēlūs*, these are what he would hear: *angēlūs*, *angēlūm*, *angēlē*, *angēlō*, *angēli*, *angēlōs*, *angēlōrūm*, *angēlis*. Clearly the nude stem *angēl-* occurs in all these forms. So it would be convenient to drop off mere endings and to use the nude stem as the English word. And in fact this is just what has

been done. The great majority of our words which are borrowed from Latin are merely *Latin nude stems*. Of course, some small changes in spelling are likely to occur. The nouns above noticed, *altar*, *angel*, *font*, *mass*, *monk*, *nun*, are nude stems. The first three are spelled exactly as in Latin. *Mass*, from *missa*, changes the vowel; *monk* is instead of *monach*; *nun* instead of *nunn*.

In the eleventh century England was conquered by the Normans, and for about three hundred years the Norman French was the official language. It was used by the higher classes of society, in parliament, in the law courts, and, for a good share of that time, in the published laws. But English continued to be spoken by the plain people, and gradually it displaced French. By the end of the fourteenth century the use of English was again general. But in the course of these centuries a multitude of French words had been adopted into English speech. Their spelling was somewhat modified in many cases, but they can easily be recognized as the same words used by the French. Now French is, as has been explained, only a modified form of Latin. Nearly all the French words taken into English were of Latin origin. We can often tell them by some peculiarity in spelling which shows how the Latin stem became altered in French.

After the fourteenth century English was the language of England. But yet for a long time the English people were much under French influence. The merchants of the two nations were constantly trading



across the channel, travellers were coming and going. Wars and treaties kept the governments busy. And in all these ways and in many more the people of England continually added French words to their vocabulary. And the most of these words were originally Latin.

There is another class of words in English which are made from Latin stems and suffixes, but which do not come from Latin words. For instance *sagacious* shows the Latin stem *sāgāc-*, of *sāgax*, *keen scented*; and the suffix *ous* is very common with us in place of the Latin case ending *-ūs*, or the nude suffix *-ōs*. So we should infer that *sagacious* comes from a Latin adjective *sāgāciūs*, or from the nude stem *sāgāciōs-* of *sāgāciōsūs*. But in fact there were no such Latin words. So this word *sagacious* has evidently been made from the stem *sāgāc-*, in imitation of many other words in *ous*, like *arduous*, *strenuous*, and the rest. Such words are called *coined words*.



### STUDY XXXVI.—LATIN WORDS USED IN ENGLISH.

128. The Latin words used in English are not very many. There are several nouns in *ā*, a few neuters in *um*, some nominatives in *is* from stems in *i*, some from stems in *in*, and a handful of others.

129. A fairly complete list of the nouns in *ā* is the following: *antennae*, *area*, *arena*, *aurora*, *boa*, *caesena*,

*camera, cornea, cornucopia, corolla, era, farina, fistula, formula, hernia, lamina, larva, mica, militia, nebula, penumbra, placenta, pupa, retina, saliva, scrofula, tibia, toga, verbenā, vertebra.*

Several of these are terms used in medicine or surgery: *cornea, fistula, hernia, placenta, retina, scrofula, tibia, vertebra.*

*Antennae, larva, pupa,* are zoölogical terms, and *corolla* belongs to botany.

The other words are in common use. *Ārēnā* in Latin means *sand*. But the place in the amphitheatre where the gladiators fought was covered with sand, so that they would not slip. For that reason the place came to be called *the sand, ārēnā*. And the word we use for any similar place. Then it has a figurative meaning, applied to any place of contest; as when we call Congress the *arena* of national politics.

*Boā* was the Latin name for a large serpent. We use it literally in the term *boa constrictor*, and figuratively for a lady's fur tippet which has the shape of a serpent.

*Cāmērā* means a *chamber*. The box used in taking photographs was called, when it was invented and before its use in photography was learned, a *cāmērā obscūrā*, i.e. a *dark chamber*. It is in that sense that the word is commonly used now.

*Corneā* is the feminine of the adjective *corneus*, *made of horn*, derived from the stem of the noun *cornū, horn*. We apply the word to the hard and transparent window of the eyeball. The feminine is used perhaps because it means *pars corneā, the horny part*.

It will be noticed that the nude stem of **cornū** is the name for a horny excrescence on the toes, a *corn*.

**Cornūcōpiā** is a Latin compound word, meaning a *horn of plenty*. We usually mean a *plenty of candy*, the *cornucopia* being the horn-shaped candy box so familiar at Christmas time.

A *peninsula* is a body of land almost surrounded by water, from the Latin **pēninsulā**, derived from **pēnē**, *almost*, and **insulā**, *an island*.

**Mica** is the name for minerals which split into thin, shining sheets. It is used in stoves, and is often called *isinglass*, which is really quite another thing. Now the Latin word **mīcā** means *a crumb* — which certainly has nothing to do with our mineral. But the verb **mīcārē** means *to shine*. So perhaps *mica* was originally used as the name of the mineral from a mistaken notion that **mīcā** had something to do with **mīcārē**.

130. A few nominatives of **e** stems are used as English words: **congrēiēs**, **sēriēs**, **spēcīēs**, **sūpēficiēs**.

The accusative form **rēquiēm** is also an English word. It means a mass, or solemn religious musical service, sung in honor of the dead. The Latin **rēquiēs** means *rest*. The Latin church service for the dead begins with the words **Rēquiēm aeternām dōnā eis, Dōmīnē**, *Give them eternal rest, O Lord*. So the first word of the service came to be commonly used as the name of the whole — just as we often refer to a hymn by its first line.

**Rēbūs** is the ablative plural of **rēs**, *a thing*. A rebus is a method of representing a word or sentence by

means of pictures of objects whose separate names sound like the syllable or words in question.

"A gallant in love with a woman named *Rose Hill*, had embroidered on his gown a rose, a hill, an eye, a loaf, a well, signifying *Rose Hill, I love well.*"

— WEBSTER'S INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY.

*A rebus means literally by means of things.*

**131.** Nominatives from *i* stems as English words are not very many: *amanuensis*, *axis*, *fascēs*, *fauces*, *insignia*, *mephitis*, *omnibus*, *pelvis*, *regalia*, *simile*, and the names of the months, *September*, *October*, *November*, and *December*. The last four are really adjectives, agreeing with *mensis*, *month* — September being the seventh month (*Septēm*), October the eighth, etc. The Romans began the year in March.

An *āmanuensis* was one who wrote from dictation (*i.e.* who wrote out with the hand, *ā mānū*).

An *omnibus* is a public vehicle, *i.e.* vehicle for all. *Omnibūs* is the dative plural of *omnis*, *all*.

**132.** Nominatives from *δ* stems used as English words are more numerous: *album*, *cancer*, *canker*, *circus*, *decemvir*, *decorum*, *delirium*, *deuce* (= *deūs*), *duodenum*, *equilibrium*, *exordium*, *focus*, *forum*, *frustum*, *fulcrum*, *Gemini*, *genius*, *incubus*, *indecorum*, *interregnum*, *labellum*, *laburnum*, *locus*, *lustrum*, *millennium*, *nasturtium*, *nucleus*, *odium*, *pabulum*, *premium*, *radius*, *rostrum*, *Sagittarius*, *serum*, *stratum*, *substratum*, *Taurus*, *triumvir*, *transom* (= *transtrūm*), *vacuum*, *Venus*, *vesper*, *vinculum*.

**Albūm** is the neuter of the adjective **albūs**, ūm, ā, *white*, and means merely a *white* (unwritten) book.

**Nostrūm**, neuter of **nostrē**, is literally *our own*, i.e. a special kind of a drug.

**Circūs** meant anything round, hence a circular space for races and athletic contests, and so a building for such purposes, or, as with us, such an exhibition.

**Dēcōrūm** is the neuter of the adjective **dēcōrūs**, ūm, ā, *becoming*. So *decorum* is conduct which is *becoming*.

**Fōcūs** in Latin means a *hearth* or *fireplace*. Then it means a centre of light, and hence any point from which rays diverge or to which they converge.

**Fōrūm** in Latin means a *market place*, or a *public square* where courts sat. Hence it came to be applied to any place of justice. And so our word *forensic* means *relating to the forum*, i.e. to a court of justice.

**Rostrūm** means a *beak* (i.e. of a bird). Then the name was applied, by an obvious resemblance, to the prow of a war vessel. In one of their wars the Romans captured a number of ships from the fleet of the enemy, and fastened the prows to a column in the great public square in Rome. Near this column was placed the platform in which public speakers stood. And so that platform came to be called the **rostrā**. From that usage we have learned to call such a platform a *rostrum*.

It will be noticed that **rostrūm** comes from the stem **rōd-** of **rōdērē**, to *gnaw*, to *peck*, with the suffix **-trūm** (stem **trō-**, 117, 3), denoting the *instrument*. So a **rostrūm** was the instrument with which a bird pecks.

**Sāgittāriūs**, an *archer*, and **Taurūs**, a *bull*, are names of signs of the Zodiac, and in that sense are found in almanacs.

**Vēnūs** was the Roman goddess of love and beauty, and her name has been given to the brilliant planet which we admire as evening star (perhaps sometimes we have seen it as morning star).

**Vespēr** was the Roman name for the evening star. Hence it came to mean *the evening*, and then religious services held late in the day were called *vespers*.

**133.** A few nouns from *u* stems are used as English words: *apparatus*, *fetus*, *hiatus*, *impetus*, *status*.

**Hiātūs** means a *yawning*, an *opening* (from *hiārē*, to *yawn*). It is thence applied to a vacant space of some kind — as a *hiatus* in a manuscript.

**Stātūs** means *standing* (from *stārē*, to *stand*), *position*.

**134.** Nominatives from a few consonant stems are used as English words: *silex*, *specimen*, *stamen*, *tyro* (*tiro*), *torpedo*, *virago*, *vertigo*, *viscera*.

**Spēcīmēn** is the nominative of the Latin stem *spēcī-mīn-*, derived from the stem of *spēcērē*, to *see*, by the suffix *-mīn-* (117, 3), denoting the means. Hence a *specimen* is something by means of which one can see what a given sort of thing is like.

**Tirō** (stem *tīrōn-*) meant a *raw soldier*, a *recruit*. We use it in the sense of a person inexperienced in any occupation. The spelling *tyro* is a mere blunder, but long custom seems to have fixed it.

**Torpēdō** (stem *torpēdīn-*) meant *numbness* (from *torpērē*, to *be numb*). Then it was applied to the electric

eel, which gave to one handling it a shock that produced a sensation of numbness. We use it for what causes a shock, as the common Fourth of July plaything, and the deadly implement used in war.

**Vīrāgō** (stem **vīrāgīn-**) meant a woman having man-like qualities (from **vīr**, *man*). We think only of disagreeably bold and quarrelsome qualities in using the word.

**Vertīgō** (stem **vertīgīn-**) meant *giddiness* (from **ver-tērē**, *to turn*). We use it in exactly the same sense.

**Viscērā**, *the entrails*, is a neuter plural from **viscūs** (stem **viscēr-**).

A list of noun consonant stems whose nominatives are used as English words, is appended.

In some instances the nominative is used without change: as, **abdōmēn**, **farrāgō**.

In other words the nominative form is so different from the stem that it seems to have been treated as if it had a distinct stem of its own, and the nude form of that supposed nominative stem, with or without final *e*, is the English word: **fortitūdō** (stem **fortitūdīn-**, 37), *fortitude*; **cūpidō** (stem **cūpidīn-**), *Cupid*.

Abdomen (stem **abdōmīn-**), acumen (**ācūmīn-**), albumen (**albūmīn-**), altitude (**altītūdīn**, N. **altītūdō**), apex (**āpīc-**, 21), bitumen (**bītūmīn-**), cognomen (**cognōmīn-**), cortex (**cortīc-**), Cupid (**cūpidīn-**, N. **Cūpidō**), desuetude (**desuētūdīn-**, N. **desuētūdō**), farrago (**farrāgīn-**), forceps (**forcīp-**), fortitude (**fortītūdīn**, N. **fortītūdō**), genus (**gēnēs-**), ibex (**ībīc-**), index (**indīc-**), lens (**lent-**), lumbago (**lumbāgīn-**), magnitude (**magnītūdīn-**, N. **magnītūdō**), matrix (**mātrīc-**), occiput (**occīpīt-**, like **cāpīt-**,

N. *căpūt*, 41), omen (*ōmīn-*), parse (= *pars*, the nominative from the stem *part-*), plumbago (*plumbāgīn-*), poppy (= *păpăvēr*), poultice (= *pultēs*, pl. of *pult-*), pulse (= *puls*, the nominative from the stem *pult-*), punt (*pontōn-*, N. *pontō* — our word *pontoon* comes from the stem), pus (*pūs-*), regimen (*rēgīmīn-*), silex (*sīlīc-*), specimen (*spēcīmīn-*), tyro (*tīrōn-*, N. *tīrō*), torpedo (*torpēdīn-*), vicissitude (*vīcissītūdīn-*, N. *vīcissītūdō*), virago (*vīrāgīn-*), vertex (*vertīc-*), vertigo (*vertīgīn-*), viscera (*viscēr-*; *viscera* is the n. pl.), vortex (*vortīc-*), vulture (*vultūr-*).

**135.** A few Latin pronouns are used as English words: *quōrūm*, of *whom* — a *quorum* is the proportion of a public body necessary to transact business (*i.e.* the body consists of a certain number, of *whom* so many must be present).

**136.** Adjectives with stem in *o*, *a* often are used in the masc. n. sing. as English words. However, we write *ous*, instead of *us*, in the last syllable (p. 158); thus, instead of the Latin *ambīguūs*, we write *ambigu-ous*. A list follows:

abstemious, ambiguous, anxious, arboreous, arduous, argillaceous, assiduous, calcareous, canorous, carnivorous, commodious, compendious, consanguineous, conscious, conspicuous, contemporaneous, contiguous, continuous, cretaceous, deciduous, devious, dexterous (as if the Latin were *dextērūs*), dubious, egregious, erroneous, extraneous, factitious, fastidious, ferreous, ferruginous, flagitious, fortuitous, fulvous, gallinaceous,



garrulous, glutinous, gratuitous, gregarious, impervious, incongruous, indigenous, ingenuous, innocuous, innoxious, inodorous, integer, invidious, lascivious, ligneous, ludicrous, magnanimous, mellifluous, meretricious, miscellaneous, miser, multifarious, nefarious, neuter, notorious, noxious, nutritious, obnoxious, obstreperous, obvious, omnivorous, opprobrious, osseous, pendulous, perfidious, perspicuous, pervious, posthumous, precarious, preposterous, previous, promiscuous, propitious, prosperous, pusillanimous, querulous, ridiculous, sedulous, simultaneous, sinister, solicitous, somniferous, sonorous, soporiferous, spontaneous, spurious, stupendous, strenuous, subterranean, superfluous, surreptitious, tedious, testaceous, unanimous, uxorious, various, venous, vitreous, viviparous.

Occasionally a neuter singular is used, usually as a noun: maximum, medium, minimum, modicum, pendulum.

**137.** Adjectives with consonant stems are sometimes used in the nominative form as English words: *complex, minus, plus*.

**138.** There are some verb forms which have come into use as English words.

*Affidavit* is the third person singular of the perfect indicative active of *affidārē*, to make oath. So it means properly *he has made oath*. But we use it as a noun to describe a certain form of oath.

*Habitāt* is a third person singular of the present indicative active of *hābitārē*, to dwell, and means *it*

*dwells.* We use it as a noun to denote the place where an animal lives.

*Vagary* is merely the infinitive of the deponent verb *vāgārī*, *to wander*. The final *i* becomes *y* in English, as is usually the case (142, 4). We use the word as a noun, meaning some whim which wanders from common sense.

*Vētō*, *I forbid*, is the present indicative of *vētārē*, *to forbid*. We use it both as a verb and as a noun.

*Tēnēt*, *he holds*, is a third person singular. But we use it as a noun to denote *what* one holds. We speak of Luther's *tenets* in religious matters.

*Vidēlicēt* (often abbreviated to *viz.*) is a contraction of *vidērē licēt*, *it is easy* (*licēt*, *it is permitted*, hence *it is easy*) *to see*. We use it in the sense of *namely*.

*Exīit*, *he goes out*, is a third person singular, from *exīrē*. We use it as a noun, to denote either the act of going out, or the place where one goes out.

*Dirge*, *a funeral hymn, a lament for the dead*, is a contraction of *dirīgē*, *direct thou*, the imperative of *dirīgērē*, *to direct*. We use it as a noun, applying it to the entire service of which it is a part, as is the case in *requiem* (130). In the service for the dead used by the Latin church an antiphon begins, *Dirīgē, Dōmīnē, Deūs meūs, in conspectū tuō, vitām meām*, *Lord, direct thou my life in thy sight* (Psalms v. 8).

*Cāveāt*, *let him beware*, is the present subjunctive of *cāvērē*, *to beware*. It is used in a legal document, which hence is called a *caveat*.

*Fiāt*, *let it become*, is the present subjunctive of *fiērī*, *to become*. In English the word is a noun or an adjec-

tive. We speak of the *fiat* of one in authority, meaning his *command*. *Fiat money* is what passes as money, not from its intrinsic value, but from the command of government.

**Mōmentō**, *remember*, is an imperative. We use it as a noun, meaning a memorial.

**Plaudīt** is a third person singular from **plaudērē**, *to applaud*. With us it is a noun meaning *applause*.

**Possē** is an infinitive (98, 2), meaning *to be able*. We use it as a noun meaning a group of men ordered to the assistance of a sheriff so that he may *be able* to make an arrest.

**Query** is our way of spelling **quaerē**, the imperative of **quaerērē**, *to seek*. It is a noun with us, meaning a *seeking*, a *question*.

**Recipe**, a medical prescription, is the imperative of **rēcipērē**, *to take*. The Latin form of the physician's prescription began with the word **rēcipē**, *take*. Hence we use the word as the name of the entire prescription.

139. There are some Latin phrases which are commonly used as English words.

**Hābeās corpūs**, *produce the body*, were the first words in a Latin writ issued by the courts. We use the phrase as the name of the writ. **Hābeās** is the subjunctive of **hābērē**, *to have*, *to produce*.

**Mandāmūs**, *we command*, is the first word in the Latin form of another legal writ, used in English as the name of the writ. We must remember that Latin was long the language of the law in England.

**Postobit** is another legal term, being a contraction

of **post obitūm**, *after death*. It is applied to an obligation to pay money after the death of one from whom the promisor is to inherit.

*Post mortem* is either a noun or adjective. We speak of a *post mortem*, or of a *post mortem examination*. It is merely the Latin phrase **post mortēm**, *after death*.

**Ad interim**, *for the time being*, we use literally, or frequently as a noun or adjective: "He served *ad interim*." "This was an *ad interim* appointment."

**Ex tempore**, *at (literally, out of) the time*, is used literally: "He spoke *ex tempore*." It also becomes an adjective: "An *extempore* address." Then we make from it the verb *extemporize*, and the adjective *extemporaneous*.

**Āvē, Māriā, Haīl, Mary**, and **pāter noster**, *our Father*, are at the beginning of certain Latin prayers — hence are used as the names of those prayers.

The Protestant Episcopal church uses a service in the English language. But it was originally in Latin, as that of the Roman Catholic church is still. The Episcopal service was translated into English only some three and a half centuries ago, and retains yet the Latin names for many of its parts.

The *Gloria Patri* begins with the words "Glory be to the Father"; the *Gloria in Excelsis*, with the words "Glory be to God on high" (**In excelsis**); the *Te Deum*, "We praise thee, O God"; the *Benedicite*, "O all ye works of the Lord, bless ye (**bēnēdicite**) the Lord"; the *Jubilate*, "O be joyful in the Lord."

The student will notice how easy it is for the first word, or some of the first words of a set form, like

a legal document or a portion of a church service, to be used as a sort of catch word, and so to become an English name for the whole; *i.e.* an English noun.

*Mob* is a mere contraction of *mōbīlē vulgūs*, *the uneasy crowd* (*mōbīlē* is hard to translate in this expression — perhaps it might be rendered *always in motion*).

*Quinquagesima* Sunday is the second Sunday before Lent; so called because it is about the fiftieth day (*quīnquāgēsīmā diēs*) before Easter.

*Duodecimō* (the ablative singular of *duōdēcīmūs*, *twelfth*) is a name applied to a book made of sheets of paper each of which is so folded as to make twelve leaves. The full expression would be *in duōdēcīmō*, *in twelfth*. In like manner we use *quarto*, from *quartūs*, *fourth*, and *octavo*, from *octāvūs*, *eighth*. *Folio* is the ablative singular of *fōliūm*, *leaf*. A folio book is one in which each sheet of paper is folded once, *i.e.* so as to make two leaves.

*Summūm bōnūm* means *the highest good*.

*Viā ductā*, *a road led* (across some obstacle, as a ravine), gives *viaduct*. In like manner from *āquā ductā*, we have *aqueduct*, etc.

140. Some Latin prepositions and adverbs are used in English as nouns or adjectives.

The preposition *extrā*, *beyond*, becomes an English adjective. We speak of working *extra hours*, of an *extra edition* of a newspaper, or, as the newsboys call it, an “extra” (they are more likely to say “extry”).

*Intērīm*, *in the meantime*, is used as an English noun;

"the *interim* between the sessions of Congress was full of activity." The Latin phrase *ad int̄rim*, for the time being, has already been mentioned.

*It̄em*, also, is used in the form of drawing a will: "I bequeath one thousand dollars to John Smith; *Item*, five hundred dollars to his daughter, Mary Smith."

It becomes an English noun very commonly used: "The *items* of the account are correct."

*Extrā*, beyond — i.e. something beyond the ordinary: an *extra* hat.

*Aliās*, otherwise, is used literally as an adverb in legal descriptions: "George Smith, *alias* Jones." It is also a noun, meaning an assumed name: "His *alias* was Jones."

*Alibi*, elsewhere, is used as a noun in a legal sense. If an accused person proves an *alibi*, he proves that he was elsewhere when the act in question was committed.

*Grātis*, for nothing, is used just in that sense: "The boy had his education *gratis*."

*Tandēm*, at length, is applied whimsically to a team of horses harnessed one before the other, instead of side by side: "The young man drove a *tandem*."

---

## STUDY XXXVII. — LATIN STEMS USED AS ENGLISH WORDS.

141. The great bulk of English words which come to us directly from the Latin consist simply of the nude stem of the Latin word (54, NOTE). As has

been explained, this was the form which would be incessantly heard in conversation, and so it would be natural to use this and to drop off the suffixes of inflection which were peculiar to the Latin grammar.

Thus the nude stem of *arcă*, a chest, is *arc-*, which we write *ark*; *cellă* gives us *cell*, *cöłumnă*, *column*.

*Verbŭm* (stem *verbŏ-*), *word*, gives us *verb* (i.e. the word, the most important word, in a sentence).

In like manner come *auction* (from *auctiŏn-*, *increasing*), *benefactor* (from *bēnēfactŏr-*, *well doer*), *font* (from *font-*, N. *fons*, a fountain). The adjectives *augustŭs* and *ăquăticŭs* give us *august* and *aquatic*. From *abscondĕrĕ*, to hide away, comes *abscond*, and *advertĕrĕ*, to turn to, gives us *advert*.

142. In writing these stems as English words we sometimes make slight changes in spelling. For instance, the nude stem of *arcă*, a chest, we write *ark*, which is conveniently different from the nude stem of *arcŭs*, a bow, which we write *arc*.

1. One of the changes is the addition to the nude stem of a silent *e*. Thus we write *recline*, from *rĕclīnĕrĕ*, to lean back; *probe*, from *prŏbārĕ*, to prove; *cede*, from *cĕdĕrĕ*, to yield; *captive*, from *captivŭs*, a prisoner; *convince*, from *convīncĕrĕ*, to conquer. This *e* is not sounded, and its use is to show that the next preceding vowel is long (*prŏbe*, not *prŏb*), or that a preceding *c* or *g* should have the soft sound (*convince*, we pronounce *convinse*, not *convink*). It is also added when the word otherwise would end in a mute and a liquid — *amicable*.

2. Another change consists in dropping out *i* (and sometimes *ě* or *ŭ*) in a suffix between a mute and a liquid. The nude stem of *amicābilis*, *friendly* (stem *amicābil-*), is *amicābil-*. We drop out *i* between *b* and *l*, and write the stem *amicable* — adding the silent *e*.

3. When the nude stem ends in a doubled consonant, we usually drop one, unless the accent falls on the final syllable. Thus *dēterrērē*, *to frighten from*, gives *deter*, instead of *deterr*; but we write *add*, *null*, *still*.

4. If the nude stem ends in *t*, it is written *y* in English. *Pulmōnāriūs*, *belonging to the lungs*, gives *pulmonary*, instead of *pulmonari*; *lāpīdāriūs*, *a stone cutter*, gives *lapidary*; *āvīārītūm*, *a place to keep birds* (117, 5), gives *aviary*. But sometimes *t* is dropped instead of being written as *y*: *capitol*, from *cāpītōliūm*.

We also use *ty* instead of final *tāt* in nude stems of nouns: *lēvītāt-* (N. *lēvītās*), *lightness*, we write *levity*.

5. Occasionally, a vowel in the nude stem is changed, perhaps originally from mere carelessness.

The first word in the Latin version of the creed which is recited in the church services is *crēdō*, *I believe*. The nude stem is *crēd-*, which we should expect to find written *crede*. At an early period it was written in that way, the silent *e* at the end showing that the other *e* was long. But somehow we have come to indicate that long sound by doubling the *e*, writing *creed* instead of *crede*.

*Box*, the name of a shrub, or tree, comes from *buxā*. *Farm* is from *firmā*; *fork* from *furcā*.

The nude stem *disc-*, from *discūs*, *a platter, a plate*,



gives us three words: *disc*, which means something flat and round; *dish*, which is a utensil for holding something, like food; and *desk*, which was primarily a little table with a flat, round top, for holding a book or writing materials.

#### NOTES ON ANALYZING DERIVATIVES.

In analyzing a word which has come to us from the Latin, the student should be able to do two things.

1. The Latin form of the English word should be pointed out, and the changes in spelling (if any) made by the transfer to English.

Thus: *agriculture* is the nude stem, *āgrīcultūr-*, of the Latin noun *āgrīcultūra*. Silent *e* is added to the nude stem because the preceding vowel is long.

2. The Latin form should then be resolved into its parts, their meaning given, and the changes in spelling (if any) pointed out.

Thus: *āgrīcultūra* = *āgrō-*, a *field*, + *cultūra*, *cultivation*. *cultūra* = *cult-* (supine stem of *cōlērē*, to *cultivate*) + *-ūra* (denoting *the act*, 117, 1).

In forming the compound, the vowel *o* in *āgrō-* is changed to *i*.

In order to analyze correctly, the student should have access to a standard English dictionary and to Skeat's Etymological Dictionary. A good Latin dictionary will also be of great service.

From this time forward there should be copious exercises in analysis. The various lists of words will afford ample material.

### 143. LATIN NOUN STEMS USED AS ENGLISH WORDS.

#### 1. CONSONANT STEMS.

As these stems do not end in a vowel, the entire stem is taken as an English word.

##### *a. Mute Stems.*

Stems in *-tāt-* drop the final *t* in English, and *y* is used in place of the *a*. This use of *y* for *a* was perhaps originally a mere carelessness of enunciation, — as sometimes one hears to-day "Saratogy," instead of "Saratoga." However that may be, the ending in *y* in place of *-at-* is quite like what we find very commonly in Latin stems which come to us through the French. So it may be an imitation.

acclivity (from the stem *acclivītāt-*), alacrity (from the stem *ālācritāt-*), biped, chalk (= *calc-*), comity, consort, equanimity, font, fund, laud, lenity, levity, longevity (*e* stands for *ae* in Latin), mendacity, mount, octant, pitch (= Latin stem *pīc-*), proclivity, propinquity, pumice (= *pūmīc-*), quadrant, quadruped, quiddity, sanctity, sextant, virility.

##### *b. Liquid Stems.*

*Stems in l.*

consul, proconsul.

*Stems in n.*

There are many stems in *-tīōn-* (*-tīōn-*), which are abstract nouns, formed from the supine stems of verbs by the suffix *-iōn-* (117, 1).

aberration, ablution, abortion, accretion, alligation, alliteration, allocution, auction, avocation, cachinna-

tion, centurion, circumlocution, circumvallation, concoction, cognition, congestion, conjugation, cremation, denunciation, dereliction, detraction, disjunction, disquisition, disruption, dissertation, dissimulation, duration, edition, elision, elocution, emendation, emotion, equation, evasion, evulsion, excursion, extradition, hallucination, injunction, insurrection, intromission, introspection, intuition, inundation, jubilation, junction, lection, libration, litigation, lotion, lustration, mensuration, mission, notation, nutation, obstruction, percussion, potation, precession, pre-emption, quaternion, redintegration, retrocession, saltation, supererogation, tradition, vivisection.

Stems in *-mĭn-* (forming the N. in *-mĕn*, 117, 3), *-dĭn-* and *-gĭn-* (N. *dō*, *gō*, 134) are not usually transferred to English. The nominative singular, which is quite unlike the stem, and was a case form very much used, and hence one which would quite often be heard, is preferred in English. But it seems frequently to have been treated as if it were itself a stem, the nude form being used, with silent *e* final, if the preceding vowel is long. Examples are *fortitude*, *altitude*, and others; see 134. The stem becomes an English word in *margin* (*margĭn-*).

#### *Stems in r.*

These are generally derivative nouns denoting the *agent*.

augur, author (= *auctōr*), benefactor, censor, coadjutor, collaborator, competitor, cucumber (= *cūctūmĕr*),

doctor, gladiator, horror, legislator, lemur, licitor, malefactor, nomenclator, pallor, pastor, praetor, precentor, precursor, predecessor, proctor, prolocutor, spectator, splendor, sponsor, tuber, turtle (= *turtūr*), victor.

*Stem in t.*

infant.

2. VOWEL STEMS.

a. *Stems in a.*

agriculture, ark, bull (meaning a papal edict), calends, candle, cell, cincture, circumference (*circumfērentiā*, the change from *ti* to *ce* being as in Latin nouns which come to us through the French, 147), circumstance (from *circumstantiā*, in like manner), column, controversy, contumacy, coop (from *cūpā*, a vat, a drinking vessel), cup (also from *cūpā*, a vat, a drinking vessel), custody, cuticle, efficacy, farm, ferule, fork, gesture, granary, hoopoe (from *ūpūpā*), horticulture, host (the consecrated bread in the eucharist, from *hostiā*, the *i* being lost), inch, juncture, kitchen (from *cōquinā*), line (meaning a cord, from *linēā*), lymph, mallow (from *mālūā*), mandible, mulct, nomenclature, noon (= *nōnā hōrā*, the ninth hour — originally 3 p.m., as the Romans began to count the hours at 6 — but afterward the time of the church service called *nones*, i.e. the service for the ninth hour, was put back. So the word has since been applied to mid-day), nun (from *nunnā*, or *nonnā*, mother, a title of respect), pan (from *pannā*, a common form for *pātinā*), picture, pile (mean-



ing *a stake*), piles (from *pīlā*, *a ball*), pin, plague (from *plāgā*, *a blow, an injury* — the *u* is added with silent *e*, merely to keep the hard sound of *g*), plank, plant, puncture, relict (= *rēlictā*, *left behind, i.e. a widow*), scale (meaning something graduated, as in music; from *scālā*, *a ladder*), school, scribe, shingle, shoal (meaning *a multitude*, from *scōlā*), sickle, spike, spume, tile (for *tegule*, or *tegle*, from *tēgūlā*), tincture, ton, triform, tunic, umbel, vesicle.

**b. Stems in e.**

effigy (from *effigīēs*, nude stem *effigī-*).

**c. Stems in i.**

alp, animal, crate, cusp, mile (from *millē*, *a thousand*, for *millē passuūm*, *a thousand of paces* = a Roman mile), missal, post, trireme, vest.

**d. Stems in o.**

act (from *actūm*, *a thing done*), apiary, armament, autumn, aviary, calendar (from *cālendāriūm*, *an account book*, accounts being due in the first of the month, *calends*; the *i* in the nude stem is dropped), canticle, capitol (from *cāpītōliūm*), capricorn, carbuncle, castle, cheese (from *cāseūs*), circle, circus, cirrus, codicil, colloquy, commissary, complement, condiment, corollary, corpuscle, cubit, culm, curricule, decrement, dentifrice, desk, diary, digit, dormitory, edict, element, erratum, estuary, excrement, fact, fan, fame, faun, ferment, figment, fratricide (from *frātrīcidiūm*, *i* being lost), gaud (from *gaudiūm*), gerund (from *gerundiūm*), gran-

ule, gust (meaning *relish*), increment, integument, interdict, January, joke, July, June (from *Jūniūs*), juniper, kettle (from *cātilūs*, a *little bowl*), lapidary, lavatory, libel, limb (meaning *edge*), maniple, manse, manuscript, March (from *Martiūs*), mat, mortar (meaning a vessel for pulverizing substances, also a piece of artillery of similar shape), mortuary, mule, muscle (a shell fish, also written *mussel*), must (meaning *new wine*), node, nutriment, obloquy, osprey (from *ossi-frāgā*; also written *ossifrage*, which is more like the Latin stem), pact, pagan, palm (meaning a *tree*), pea (properly *pease*, from *pisūm*), pear (from *pīrūm*), perquisite, pigment, pile (meaning a *fibre of wool*), pine (a *tree*), pistil, pit (from *pūteūs*, a *well*), pluperfect (for *plusquamperfectūm*), postscript, precinct, promontory, sacrament, scalpel, scrutiny, segment, seminary, shambles, shrine (from *scriniūm*), sock, soliloquy, stannary, stipend, strap (from *struppūs*, a *narrow strip of leather*), street (from *strātā*), suburb, sudatory, tegument, temple, tentacle, testimony, vehicle, vestibule (from *vestibulūm*), wall, wick (meaning a *town*, from *vicūs*), wine.

#### e. Stems in u.

abscess, advent, aspect, conflict, congress, contact, context, convent, duct, egress, event, ingress, lake, port, prospect, recess, regress, rite, sine, tact, tract (short for *tractate*), verse, vomit.

REMARK. — In the above derivatives from vowel stems, it will be seen that the final vowel is often dropped. It is the stem without a final vowel which is called a NUDE STEM.

# 144. LATIN ADJECTIVE STEMS USED AS ENGLISH WORDS.

## 1. CONSONANT STEMS.

The most of these are liquid stems, usually the comparative degree.

aliquot, anterior, centuple (from **centūplex**, stem **centūplīc-**, **ic** being lost), exterior, inelegant, infrequent, interior, junior, magnificent, major, minor, par, pauper, posterior, prior, senior, ulterior.

## 2. VOWEL STEMS.

### a. Stems in i.

These are mostly derivatives in **-āli-**, **-īli-**, **-bīli-** (119).

amicable, anile, annular, astral, auricular, auxiliary, biennial, bissextile, capillary, capitular, cardinal, carnal, cereal, civil, collateral, connubial, corporal, decennial, decretal, dial, diurnal, dual, equal, fallible, femoral, floral, gradual, impeccable, imperturbable, inane, inartificial, indeclinable, inert, infirm, inimical, initial, insular, interminable, irrational, jocular, labial, lateral, lineal, linear, littoral, lumbar, lunar, matutinal, maxillary, medical, medullary, missile, molar, mutable, nominal, normal, numeral, ocular, ordinal, parietal, pedal, placable, plausible, potent, real, regular, scapular, scurrile, senile, sensual, solar, specular, stellar, textile, tractable, tutelar, uncial, ventral, vernal, vincible, vulnerable.

*b. Stems in o, a.*

ablative, absurd, acid, acute, amatory, anniversary, anserine, aquatic, arbitrary, arid, astute, august, aureate, binary, bland, calorific, candidate, canine, captive, celibate, cent, centenary, cervine, cinerary, civic, concave, crass, crisp, crude, culinary, cursive, cursory, curt, curve, decrepit, delicate, denary, dense, desultory, dire, effete, equine, esculent, extraordinary, February, feline, festive, florid, frigid, gelid, genuine, hereditary, hirsute, horrid, humane, impolite, incendiary, incentive, incomplete, incorrupt, inculpable, indemonstrable, infinite, insane, insecure, internecine, intransitive, intrepid, involuntary, italics (from *Italiōus*, an *Italian*, because the italic type was invented by an Italian), jejune, jocose, languid, lax, libertine, lucid, lurid, mature, mediterranean, minute, monetary, morose, muriatic, nude, nugatory, null, obscene, obstetric (from *obstetriciūs*, *i* being lost), olfactory, pallid, perfunctory, porcine, postmeridian, predatory, premature, private, single, sole, squalid, stolid, subacid, subjunctive, sumptuary, supine, surd, tentative, tepid, ternary, terrene, terrific, tertiary, torpid, transmarine, trine, tumid, turbid, turgid, ultimate, ultramundane, urbane, vapid, varicose, veteran, veterinary, vivid.

# 145. *LATIN VERB STEMS USED AS ENGLISH WORDS.*

1. Of the various stems of a Latin verb the one most commonly used to form English words is the *supine*.



The Latin perfect participle was regularly used by the Romans as an adjective. In this sense the nude stem of the participle, which is the same as the supine stem, was originally borrowed by the English. For instance, the supine stem of *creārē*, to create, is *creāt-*. And in an English poem of the fourteenth century we find the author (Chaucer) saying "God *hath creat* all things," which is evidently equivalent to "hath created." But in order to be sure that there could be no mistake about the meaning, people began to attach our past participle suffix *-ed* to the Latin stem, thus making *created*. And as that at once suggested a verb *create*, it was not long until that came to be used. Also, see Skeat's Etymological Dictionary, under *abbreviate*. But these supine stems we sometimes use as adjectives: *defunct*, *correct*, *abject*.

2. The present stem of many Latin verbs is also used as an English word, usually a verb. Thus from *cēdērē*, to yield, we have *cede*.

3. The stem of the present participle is sometimes used as an English adjective or noun. Thus from *āgērē*, to do, we have *agent*, i.e. one who does something; and from *sībilārē*, to hiss, comes *sibilant*, i.e. hissing.

4. The Latin perfect stem is not used as an English word.

5. The most of our words taken from Latin verb stems come from consonant stems or a stems.

## 6. FROM CONSONANT STEMS.

### a. The present stem used as an English word.

abrade, abscond, absolve, accede, acquiesce, acquire, add, adduce, admit, advert, allude, animadvert, applaud, apprehend, ascend, ascribe, assume, avert, bib (used as a noun, from *bībērē*, to drink), cede, circumscribe,

circumvolve, clang, coalesce, coincide, collide, commit, compel, compound (for *compone*, from **compōnĕrĕ**, to put together), comprehend, concede, conclude, concur, condemn, conduce, confide, congrue, connect, construe, consume, convalesce, convince, cook (for *coque*, from **cōquĕrĕ**, to cook), correspond, creed (for *crede*, from **crĕdĕrĕ**, to believe), deduce, deliquesce, delude, describe, detrude, devolve, differ, dispel, dissolve, distend, diverge, divide, educe, effervesce, elide, elude, emerge, emit, evince, evolve, exclude, exhume, exist, expand, expel, expend, expunge, extend, extol, extrude, exude, imbue, immerge, immit, impel, impend, impinge, include, incur, induce, indue, inflect, infringe, inquire, inscribe, interlude (used as a noun), intermit, introduce, intrude, inveigh, invert, manumit, merge, obtrude, offer, omit, permit, pervade, portend, postpone, preclude, prescribe, pretermit, produce, propel, propound (for *propone*, from **prōpōnĕrĕ**, to set forth), proscribe, protrude, recede, recur, reduce, reflect, refund, remit, repel, reprehend, reproduce, resolve, retrograde, revolve, secede, seclude, seduce, solve, spend (for *dispend*, from **dīspendĕrĕ**, to spend), subdivide, submit, subscribe, subtend, succumb, superadd, surge, tinge, traduce, transcend, transcribe, transfer, transmit, transmute, urge, verge.

**b. The stem of the present participle used as an English word.**

absent, adolescent, agent, antecedent, belligerent, circumfluent, coefficient, cogent, component, confluent, consequent, contingent, crescent, delinquent, deponent,

diffident, eminent, erubescant, evanescent, exigent, fluent, gradient, incandescent, incipient, inconsequent, incumbent, insurgent, lambent, liquescent, malevolent, nascent, nigrescent, obsolescent, opponent, procumbent, proficient, pungent, quiescent, recumbent, refluxent, rodent, stringent, subsequent, tangent, unguent.

**c. The stem of the perfect participle (the supine stem) used as an English word.**

abject, abrupt, absolute, abstract, accept, addict, adult, affect, afflict, apposite, asperse, assert, attract, attribute, bisect, circumflex, circumcise, circumfuse, circumspect, collapse, compact, compress, concoct, concrete, conduct, conflict (the verb), conscript, constitute, contract, contradict, contribute, contrite, contuse, convex, convulse, correct, corrupt, decoct, deduct, defect, deflect, defunct, deject, depict, depress, destitute, detect, diffuse, digest, digress, dilute, direct, discuss, disperse, dispossess, dissolute, distort, distract, distribute, effuse, eject, elapse, elate, elect, elicit, erase, erect, evict, exact, except, expect, extort, extract, fuse, immense, impact, impress, incense, induct, inflict, inject, insert, inspect, institute, instruct, intact, intense, interfuse, interrupt, intersect, intersperse, involute, lapse, neglect, obese, oblate, obsolete, obstruct, observe, pollute, possess, predict, prepossess, profuse, prolate, prosecute, prostitute, prostrate, protect, protract, recon-dite, refract, relapse, repulse, select, sparse, strict, subtract, succinct, suffix, suffuse, suggest, suppress, terse, tint (for *tinct*, compare *tincture*), transfix, trans-fuse, trite.

7. FROM STEMS IN *a*.*a. Present stem used as an English word.*

abjure, acclaim (for *acclame*, from *acclāmārē*), adapt, adjure, administer, adopt, adore, adorn, alter, annul, attest, cant, cere, combine, commend, commute, compute, conceal (for *concele*, from *concēlārē*), condone, convoke, denude, deprive, evoke, exult, flog ("perhaps a schoolboy's abbreviation from the Latin *flagellārē*, to *whip*, once a familiar word." Skeat), full, inhale, interline, moult (for *mute*, from *mūtārē*, to *change*), ponder, probe, recant, recline, relax, salute, secure, still, stultify, subserve, transpire.

*b. The stem of the present participle used as an English word.*

adjutant, extant (for *exstant*, from *exstārē*, to *exist*), mendicant, protuberant, redundant, regnant, reluctant, resonant, secant, sibilant, vagrant.

*c. The stem of the perfect participle (supine stem) used as an English word.*

abbreviate, abdicate, abominate, abrogate, accelerate, accommodate, accumulate, accurate, adept, adequate, adjudicate, adulterate, adumbrate, agglomerate, aggravate, aggregate, agitate, alleviate, allocate, alternate, amputate, animate, annihilate, annotate, anticipate, appreciate (from *apprētiātūs*, participle of *apprētiārē*, to *set a value*—the use of *c* for *t* was in imitation of the French), approximate, arbitrate, arrogate, articulate, asseverate, assimilate, associate, attenuate,

bifurcate, calculate, capitulate, castigate, celebrate, circumnavigate, coagulate, cogitate, cognate, collocate, commemorate, commensurate, compensate, complicate, concatenate, conciliate, confabulate, confederate, confiscate, conglomerate, conglutinate, congratulate, congregate, connate (= cognate), consecrate, consolidate, constipate, consummate, contaminate, contemplate, coöperate, copulate, corroborate, corrugate, coruscate, create, culminate, cultivate, cumulate, debilitate, decapitate, decimate, decorate, dedicate, defalcate (it should be *diffalcate*, as it comes from *diffalcārē*, to cut away with a sickle), degenerate, delegate, deliberate, delineate, demonstrate, denominate, deprecate, depreciate, derogate, desecrate, desiccate, desolate, deteriorate, detonate, devastate, deviate, dictate, dilapidate, disconsolate, discriminate, dislocate, dissect, disseminate, dissipate, dissociate, dominate, duplicate, educate, effeminate, ejaculate, elaborate, elevate, eliminate, emaciate, emanate, emancipate, emasculate, emigrate, emulate, enervate, enumerate, enunciate, eradicate, eructate, estimate, evacuate, evaporate, eviscerate, exacerbate, exaggerate, exasperate, excogitate, excommunicate, excoriate, excruciate, exculpate, execrate, exfoliate, exonerate, expatriate, expectorate, expurgate, extenuate, exterminate, extirpate (for *exstirpate*, from *exstirpārē*), extravasate, extricate, fabricate, fascinate, flagellate, fluctuate, formulate, frustrate, fulminate, fumigate, furcate, generate, gesticulate, gratulate, hesitate, humiliate, illuminate, illustrate, imitate, immigrate, immolate, implicate, imprecate, inaugurate, incarcerate, incorporate, incubate, inculcate, inculcate,

incurvate, indicate, indurate, inebriate, infatuate, inflate, initiate, innate, inoculate, insinuate, inspissate, instigate, intercalate, interpolate, interrogate, intimidate, intricate, investigate, inveterate, invoke, irradiate, irrigate, irritate, iterate, lacerate, legitimate, liberate, librate, licentiate, liquidate, locate, lubricate, macerate, maculate, matriculate, mediate, medicate, meditate, meliorate, migrate, militate, mitigate, moderate, modulate, mutilate, negotiate, nominate, obdurate, obfuscate, obliterate, obstinate, obviate, operate, ordinate, oscillate, osculate, palpitate, participate, peculate, penetrate, perambulate, percolate, perforate, permeate, perpetrate, populate, postulate, predicate, premeditate, preponderate, prevaricate, procrastinate, procreate, profligate, promulgate, propagate, pulsate, punctuate, reduplicate, refrigerate, regenerate, relegate, remonstrate, remunerate, renovate, reprobate, repudiate, resuscitate, retaliate, reverberate, ruminare, sate (merely a short form for *satiare*), satiate, saturate, sedate, segregate, separate, simulate, situate, stagnate, stimulate, subjugate, suffocate, supplicate, suppurate, surrogate (a noun), tolerate, triplicate, triturate, truncate, variegate, ventilate, vibrate, vindicate, violate.

## 8. FROM STEMS IN *e*.

### *a.* The present stem used as an English word.

abhor, absorb, adhere, coerce, cohere, condole, deride, despond, deter, provide, subside.

### *b.* The stem of the present participle used as an English word.

adjacent, circumjacent, complacent, dissident, effulgent, imminent, inherent, interjacent, latent, refulgent, resplendent, reticent, student, subjacent, supereminent, translucent.

**c. The stem of the perfect participle (supine stem) used as an English word.**

assess, cohabit, complete, devote, exhibit, inhibit, prohibit, promote, tacit, vote.

**9. FROM STEMS IN 1.**

**a. The present stem used as an English word.**

contravene, demented (the verb *dement* is obsolete, only the past participle being used), dissent, divest, glut, impede, supervene.

**b. The stem of the present participle used as an English word.**

aperient, circumambient, convenient, parturient, prurient, resilient, salient, transient.

**c. The stem of the perfect participle (supine stem) used as an English word.**

bipartite, circumvent, disunite, erudite, exhaust, expedite, exquisite, finite, prevent, unite.

**STUDY XXXVIII. — ENGLISH WORDS WHICH  
HAVE COME FROM LATIN THROUGH THE  
FRENCH.**

146. As has already been explained (p. 173), a large number of words in English have been borrowed from French. But as French is only a modified form of Latin, it is plain that the most of these French-English words can be traced back to a Latin origin. In fact, we find that Latin stems, more or less modified, compose the greater part of the French language.

In many French words the Latin nude stem has not been changed at all. Then in taking such words into English, they will appear exactly as if they had been borrowed directly from Latin. For instance, our word *cession* is just the same in spelling and in meaning as the French word *cession*. Of course, there is a difference in the pronunciation. But it is very plain that *cession* is merely the Latin stem *cessiōn-* (N. *cessiō*), which means *a yielding*, being a noun denoting *the act* (117, 1), formed by adding the suffix *-iōn-* to the supine stem *cess-* of *cēdēre*, *to yield*. The French used the stem unchanged, and as the French word came to be used by the English, they had in *cession* the precise form they would have had if they had taken it directly from the Latin stem.

How, then, do we know that the English *did* borrow *cession* from the French, and not directly from the Latin? Merely because we find that the word was used in French books before it was in English — that



it was commonly used by the French with whom the English were familiar — and that afterwards it appeared in English books. It is merely a matter of history.

Of course this historical question as to any given word of this class makes no difference with regard to its meaning, or its spelling, or the Latin stem from which it comes. Dictionaries do not always heed the question. For example, Webster's International Dictionary, under *cession*, says: "L. *cessio*, fr. *cedere* to give way; cf. F. *cession*." This shows the Latin origin (although the dictionary unfortunately gives merely the Latin nominative instead of the stem), and points out ("cf." is for the Latin *confēr*, *compare*) the French form. But it gives no notion whether the English word came directly from the Latin, or directly from the French. It is plain enough that the French word must have come from the Latin. But if the word is examined in an etymological dictionary, like Skeat's, it will be explained quite differently. It will there appear that *cession* is from the French *cession*, and the latter is from the Latin *cessiōn-*, which is from the participial stem *cessūs*, of *cēdērē*, to *yield*.

However, it is not absolutely necessary that the student at this point should in all cases know the historical fact as to the French origin of words which are obviously mere Latin stems. The important thing is to understand the Latin origin.

A few examples of these words follow, with the Latin original, the French word which was directly borrowed being omitted. Often this French word did not differ in form from the English.

accord, *accordārē*, to agree; accuse, *accusārē*, to charge against one; admire, *admirārī*, to wonder at; adulation, *ādulātīōn-*, flattery, fawning (this is from *ādulārī*, which probably means to wag the tail, like a dog — hence to fawn); adverse, *adversūs* (from *adver-tērē*), turned against; advise, *ād visūm*, towards what seems best (*visūm*, the accusative neuter of the participle from *vidērē*, to see, in the passive, to seem); alb, *albā* (from *albūs*, white), a white priestly vestment; altar, *altārī-* (N. *altārē*), a high place (from *altūs*, high), altercation, *altercātīōn-*, a dispute; ambition, *ambīdīōn-*, going around, i.e. going around electioneering (from *ambīrē*, to go around); angle, *angŭlūs*, a corner; beatitude, N. *beātītūdō* (stem *beātītūdīn-*, from *beātūs*, blessed), blessedness; benign, *bēnignūs*, kind; cancel, *cancellārē*, to draw lines across a deed (from *cancellūs*, a grating); candid, *candīdūs*, shining, clear.

In like manner find the derivation of the following: cessation, cession, client, collation, collect, college, commission, compose, concord, condescend, conjure, consent, conspire, contemn, damn, declare, decline, depend, deposit, descend, discern, effect, eloquent, excel, except, excess, false, firm, fraction, fracture, fragment, furtive, humid, ignore, image, imagine, imbibe, immortal, implore, import, impugn, indict, infer, innocent, intercede, interjection, invoke, jurisdiction, malediction, malign, maritime, mediator, meridian, mobile, modest, motion, multitude, nature, note, numeration, obscure, occur, omnipotent, oppress, orator, oration, perjure, perturb, prelude, prove, proverb, provoke, pure, purge, radical, refer, regent, repugnant,

request, require, reside, rescript, respire, resume, resurrection, rustic, sanguine, scripture, sect, sport, state, station, stature, structure, subject, sum, superscription, tabernacle, tangible, temple, terror, tranquil, translate, transport, tribune, tumult, tutor, vacation, venture, victory, violent, virtue.

In the above list we notice examples of all the forms of derivation from Latin nude stems as seen in Study XXXVII.

There are consonant stems of nouns, like *cessation*, *cession*, *oration*; vowel stems of nouns (nude)—a stems, like *stature*, from *stātūrā*—i stems, like *altar*, from *altārī*—o stems, like *proverb*, from *prōverbiō* (N. *prōverbiūm*); the nude nominative of stems in -in- (37), like *multitude*, from *multitūdō* (stem *multitūdīn-*); adjective nude stems in o, like *benign*, from *bēnignō* (N. *bēnignūs*);—present stems of verbs (with or without final e), like *decline*, from *dēclīnārē*, *to bend aside* (or *away*) *from*—or *perturb*, from *perturbārē*, *to disturb*; supine stems of verbs, like *effect*, from *efficērē* (*effectūs*); present participle stems, like *regent*, from *rēgērē*, *to rule*.

147. There are other words which come from the French, which in that language have made a change from the Latin stem, but which yet are easily recognizable.

*Amorous* is from the nude stem of *āmōrōsūs*, *full of love* (from *āmōr*, *love*). The modern French form of this stem is *amoureux*, -*eu* standing for the Latin *ō*. We write *ou* for the French *eu* (which in the older French was *ou* or *u*).

English.	French.	Latin.
<i>captious</i>	<i>captieux</i>	<i>captiōsūs, overcritical</i>
<i>clamour</i>	<i>clamur</i>	<i>clāmōr-, a tumult</i>
<i>colour</i>	<i>colur</i> (modern <i>couleur</i> )	<i>cōlōr-, color</i>
<i>honour</i>	<i>honur</i> ( " <i>honneur</i> )	<i>hōnōr-, honor</i>
<i>labour</i>	<i>labour</i> ( " <i>labeur</i> )	<i>lābōr-, labor</i>

*Clamour, colour, honour, labour*, are the mode of spelling the words in England, the *ou* in the last syllable showing that they come from the French and not directly from the Latin. In this country, however, we have formed the habit of writing *clamor, color, honor, labor*. It certainly is hardly worth while to keep the *u*, which is entirely useless otherwise, merely to point out the historical fact that such words were originally taken into English from the French. If we are to try to show by spelling the *history* of words rather than merely their *sounds*, our spelling will steadily grow even more tangled and ridiculous than it is.

*Facetious* is from the French *facetieux*, and that from the Latin *fācētūs, witty*. Here the nominative form was taken into French, *x* being written for *s* (having the same sound) as in *amoureux*, and *eu* for the vowel. The *i* before *eu* seems to come from a confusion with the Latin noun *fācētiae, jokes*. In taking the French word, we write *ou* for *eu*, and *s* for *x*.

We have taken many Latin adjectives directly into English from the nominative in *-us* (136), writing *ous* for *-us*. It seems likely that this was in imitation of the French change, as explained above.

Another change from the Latin stem which results from our borrowing a word from the French, is seen in *benevolence*. The French form is the same, the Latin being *bēnēvōlentiā*. As has been explained,

in the middle ages the Latin *t* came to have the sound *ts*, and after a while the *t*, being difficult to sound before *s*, was dropped out. This left merely the *s* sound, which the French spelled *ce*. The *i* was lost, the nude stem being taken to end in *-nt*. We have many words in *-ce* taken thus from the French way of spelling, although the words are often directly from Latin. *Sapience*, from the Latin *sāpientiā*, *wisdom*, and *somnolence*, from the Latin *somnōlentiā*, *sleepiness*, came through the French, like *benevolence*. So does *palace*, from *pālātiūm*, in the same way.

*Debt* is a word with a silent letter, *b*. It was once written in English *dette*, pronounced just as we do *debt*. It was taken into English from the old French word *dette*, which in turn was the careless French way of sounding the stem of the Latin *dēbitā*, *a sum owed*. After English people remembered the origin of the French word, they came to slip in a *b*, to show their learning, and so we now write *debt*, although we never sound the *b*. We have taken *debit*, however, directly from the Latin nude stem.

Other French changes in Latin stems are seen in these English words: *deign* from *dignārī*, *to think worthy*, or *proper*; *mountain*, from *montānā* (a late Latin form for *mont*, N. *mons*); *saint*, from *sanctūs*, *holy*.

The Latin verb *fācērē*, *to make*, had another stem used in the passive, *fī*-. From this the French formed a number of words, and we have followed their fashion — sometimes adopting these French words, sometimes taking Latin ones, but always writing *-fy* instead of *fī*-.

Thus we have *satisfy*, *deify*, *dignify*, *horrify*, *modify*, *mollify*, *mortify*, *nullify*, *unify*.

148. In what has been said in this study it has been intended merely to give a few examples of the ways in which Latin stems have been changed in coming to us from French. To understand all these changes it would be necessary not only to make a study of the French language, but to follow that language through its changes for nearly a thousand years, for, as has been seen, we have been borrowing French words all the time during that period.

Some of the words thus derived look rather remote from the Latin; *gage*, from *vādiūm*, a *pledge*; *eager*, from *ācrl-* (N. *ācēr*), *keen*; *chandler*, from *candēlārīūs*, a *candle seller*; *chapel*, from *cāpellā*, a *sanctuary*; *rage*, from *rābiē-* (N. *rābiēs*), *madness*; *menace*, from *mīnāciae*, *threats*; *bounty*, from *bōnītāt-* (N. *bōnītās*), *goodness*.

*Villain* is from *villānūs*, which in Latin meant simply a *farm servant* (from *villā*, a *farm*). In the middle ages these servants became so degraded in the social scale that the name became a term of reproach — hence the modern meaning.

*Fitz* was a Norman French word meaning *son*. It is merely a modification of *fillūs*, *son*.

## STUDY XXXIX. — COINED WORDS.

149. English words of Latin origin are not merely those which consist of a Latin word or the stem of a Latin word. It is sometimes convenient to express an idea by joining two Latin stems which the Romans never used together. Thus a *bicameral* legislature is one which is composed of *two chambers* (e.g. the congress of the United States consists of the Senate and the House of Representatives). *Bi* is the stem of *bis*, *twice*, and *cameral* is the nude stem of *cāmērālis*, an adjective formed from the noun stem *cāmērā*, *a chamber*. But there is no Latin word *bicāmērālis*.

Such words are called COINED WORDS. Many of these words have an English or a Greek suffix attached to a Latin stem: e.g. *dentist* is from the Latin stem *dēnt-*, *tooth*, with the Greek suffix *-ist*, denoting the one who *does* something implied in the stem — in this case, one who attends to the teeth.

Examples of coined words are the following:

adverb, alluvial, ambidextrous, antedate, antediluvian, binomial, caloric, caudal, centennial, centrifugal, centripetal, congenial, coördinate, coronation, coroner, dentist, disconnect, disinfect, dismiss, egoist, egotist, fac-simile, factotum, festal, filial, forensic, grandiloquent, horrify, identical, illegal, illogical (and many more with the prefix *in-*, meaning *not*), immature, immoderate, incantation, indescribable, indestructible, indispensable, individual, indomitable, itinerant, laboratory, legacy, linen, lingual, linguist, locomotion,

locomotive, magniloquence, mediæval, micaceous, non-descript, omniscient, oral, patrician, pedestrian, penumbra, perennial, pessimist, predominate, prehensile, propensity, pugilism, pugnacious, quadrillion, radical, rapacious, rapture, rivulet, sagacious, salubrious, septennial, sinecure, subordinate, supercilious, superstructure, teetotum, telluric, tenacious, terrestrial, timorous, triennial, undulate, vaccinate, velocipede, ventriloquist, veracious.





# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## TO THE EXERCISES.

[The numbers refer to Sections.]

**ăb**, *from, away from*, 22.  
**ăbundans** (ăbundant-), *abundant*, 43.  
**ăcūs** (ăcū-), *m. f., needle*, 61.  
**ăd**, *to, towards*.  
**aedēs** (aedi-), *f., house* (like *nūbēs*, 51).  
**ăgēr** (ăgrō-), *m., field*, 66.  
**ăgilīs** (-ē), *active*, 58.  
**ăgō**, **ăgērē**, **ăgī**, **actūs**, *drive*, 79.  
**ălăcēr** (-crē, -cris), *quick*, 58.  
**albūs** (ūm, ă), *white*, 71.  
**altitūdō** (altitūdīn-), *f., height*, 38.  
**altūs** (ūm, ă), *high, deep*, 71.  
**ambŭlō**, **ambŭlārē**, **ambŭlāvī**, **ambŭlātūs**, *walk*.  
**ămicūs** (ămicō-), *m., friend*.  
**ămō**, **ămārē**, **ămāvī**, **ămātūs**, *love*, 91.  
**ămōr** (ămōr-), *m., love*.  
**angŭlūs** (angŭlō-), *m., corner*, 66.  
**ănīmă** (ănīmă-), *f., breath*, 68.  
**ănīmăl** (ănīmălī-), *n., animal*, 53.  
**annūs** (annō-), *m., year*, 66.  
**ăpertŭră** (ăpertŭră-), *f., opening*, 68.  
**ăpex** (ăpic-), *m., top*, 28.

**ăquă** (ăquă-), *f., water*, 68.  
**arbōr** (arbōr-), *f., tree*, 38.  
**ărīdūs** (ūm, ă), *dry*, 71.  
**arrōgans** (arrōgant-), *arrogant*, 43.  
**artīfex** (artīfic-), *m., artificer*, 28.  
**audeō**, **audērē**, **ausūs**, *dare*, 98.  
**audiō**, **audīrē**, **audīvī**, **audītūs**, *hear*, 83.  
**auris** (aurī-), *f., ear*, 54.  
**ăvis** (ăvī-), *f., bird*, 54.  
**barbă** (barbă-), *f., beard*, 68.  
**barbărūs** (barbărō-), *m., barbarian*.  
**bellŭm** (bellō-), *n., war*.  
**bīnī** (ă, ae), *double*, 73.  
**bōnūs** (ūm, ă), *good*, 77.  
**bōs** (bōv-), *m. f., ox, cow*, 75.  
**brēvīs** (-ē), *short* (like *tristīs*, 55).  
**cădăvēr** (cădăvēr-), *m., corpse*, 41.  
**Caesăr** (Caesăr-), *m., Caesar*.  
**cănīs** (cănī-), *m., dog*.  
**cănō**, **cănērē**, **cēcīnī**, **cantūs**, *sing*, 79.

**căpër** (căprō-), m., *goat*, 66.  
**căpiō**, **căpērē**, **cēpi**, **captūs**,  
*take*, 87.  
**căpūt** (căpit-), n., *head*, 41.  
**carmēn** (carmīn-), n., *song*, 41.  
**carpō**, **carpērē**, **carpaī**, **carp-**  
**tūs**,  *nibble, pluck*, 32.  
**cătēnă** (cătēnă-), f., *chain*.  
**cēdō**, **cēdērē**, **cessā**, **cessūs**,  
*yield*, 35.  
**centūm**, *a hundred*, 73.  
**cingō**, **cingērē**, **cinxī**, **cinc-**  
**tūs**, *gird*, 32.  
**cīvis** (cīvi-), m. f., *citizen*, 54.  
**cīvītās** (cīvītāt-), f., *state*, 25.  
**classīs** (classī-), f., *fleet*, 54.  
**coelestīs** (-ē), *heavenly*, 58.  
**coelūm** (coelō-), n., *heaven*.  
**cōgitō**, **cōgitārē**, **cōgitāvi**,  
**cōgitātūs**, *think*.  
**cōlō**, **cōlērē**, **cōluī**, **cultūs**,  
*cultivate*, 79.  
**commentāriūs** (commentā-  
riō-), m., *note book*, 66.  
**consul** (consul-), m., *consul* (a  
Roman magistrate), 38.  
**cōr** (cord-), n., *heart*, 40.  
**cornū** (cornū-), n., *horn*, 61.  
**cōrōnă** (cōrōnă-), f., *crown*.  
**cōrōnō**, **cōrōnārē**, **cōrōnāvi**,  
**cōrōnātūs**, *crown*, 83.  
**corpūs** (corpōr-), n., *body*, 41.  
**crescō**, **crescērē**, **crēvi**, **crē-**  
**tūs**, *grow*, 87.  
**crīnīs** (crīnī-), m., *hair*.  
**crux** (crūc-), f., *cross*, 28.  
**cūpidō** (cūpidīn-), m., *desire*.  
**currō**, **currērē**, **cūcurri**, **cur-**  
**sūs**, *run*, 80, 91.

**currūs** (currū-), m., *chariot*,  
61.  
**custōs** (custōd-), m., *guard*,  
25.  
**dē**, *down from, about*, 28.  
**dēbīlis** (-ē), *weak*, 58.  
**dēclīvīs** (-ē), *sloping down*,  
58.  
**dēnī** (ā, ae), *ten by ten*, 73.  
**dens** (dent-), m., *tooth*, 25.  
**densūs** (ūm, ā), *thick*.  
**dīcō**, **dīcērē**, **dīxi**, **dictūs**,  
*say*, 32.  
**difficilis** (-ē), *difficult*.  
**dīlīgēns** (dīlīgēnt-), *diligent*,  
43.  
**dīscīpūlūs** (dīscīpūlō-), m.,  
*pupil*, 66.  
**dīscō**, **dīscērē**, **dīdīci**, *learn*,  
87.  
**dōceō**, **dōcērē**, **dōcuī**, **doc-**  
**tūs**, *teach*.  
**dōmīnūs** (dōmīnō-), m., *mas-*  
*ter (of slaves)*, 66.  
**dōmō**, **dōmārē**, **dōmuī**, **dōmī-**  
**tūs**, *tame*, 85.  
**dōmūs** (dōmō- and dōmū-),  
f., *house, home*, 61, 66 (for  
*house as a building, aedēs*  
is used).  
**dōnō**, **dōnārē**, **dōnāvi**, **dōnā-**  
**tūs**, *present*, 83.  
**dūcentī** (ae, ā), *two hundred*,  
73.  
**dūcō**, **dūcērē**, **dūxi**, **ductūs**,  
*lead*, 32.  
**duō** (ā, ae), *two*, 73.  
**dūplex** (dūplīc-), *double*, 74.

**dūrūs** (ūm, ā), *hard*, 71.

**dux** (dūc-), m. f., *leader*, 28.

**ēdō, ēdērē, ēdī, ēsūs, eat**, 79.

**ēgō, I**, 100. 1.

**ēlēgans** (ēlēgant-), *elegant*, 43.

**ēlōquens** (ēlōquent-), *eloquent*, 43.

**eō, irē, ivī, itūs, go**, 99. 6.

**ēpistōlā** (ēpistōlā-), f., *a letter*.

**ēquestēr** (ēquestērē, ēquestrīs), *on horseback*, 58.

**ēquūs** (ēquō-), m., *horse*, 66.

**ēt, and**, 28.

**ēvādō, ēvādērē, ēvāsī, ēvāsūs, escape**, 35.

**exercītūs** (exercītū-), m., *army*, 61.

**fāciēs** (fāciē-), f., *face*, 66.

**fallax** (fallāc-), *deceptive*, 43.

**fāmā** (fāmā-), f., *fame*.

**fāmēs** (fāmī-), f., *hunger*, 66.

**fēlis** (fēll-), f., *cat*.

**fēlix** (fēlic-), *fortunate*, 43.

**fēmīnā** (fēmīnā-), f., *woman*, 68.

**fērō, ferrē, tūllī, lātūs, carry**, 99. 3.

**fērox** (fēroc-), *ferce*, 43.

**fērūs** (ūm, ā), *wild*, 71.

**fidēs** (fidē-), f., *faith*, 66.

**finiō, finirē, finivī, finītūs, finish**, 83.

**finis** (finī-), m., *end*, 54.

**fiō, fierī, factūs, become**, 99. 5.

**flammā** (flammā-), f., *flame*, 68.

**flectō, flectērē, flexī, flectūs, bend**, 35.

**fleō, flērē, flēvī, flētūs, weep**, 83.

**flūmēn** (flūmīn-), n., *river*.

**forceps** (forcip-), m. f., *pair of tongs*, 22.

**fortis** (-ē), *brave*,

**frātēr** (frātr-), m., *brother*, 38.

**frēquens** (frēquent-), *crowded*, 43.

**frīgīdūs** (ūm, ā), *cold*, 71.

**fūgā** (fūgā-), f., *flight*, 68.

**fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgitūs, flee**, 87.

**fundō, fundērē, fūdī, fūsūs, pour**, 87.

**Galliā** (Galliā-), f., *Gaul* (the Roman name for France).

**Gallūs** (Gallō-), m., *a Gaul* (a native of Gaul).

**gēnūs** (gēnēr-), n., *kind*, 41.

**gērō, gerērē, gessī, gestūs, wage**, 87.

**glādiātōr** (glādiātōr-), m., *gladiator*, 38.

**glādiūs** (glādiō-), m., *sword*, 66.

**grex** (grēg-), f., *flock*, 28.

**hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābītūs, have**, 85.

**herbā** (herbā-), f., *sod*, 68.

**hērēs** (hērēd-), m. f., *heir*, 25.

**hic** (hōc, haec), *this*, 100. 3.

**hōmō** (hōmīn-), m. f., *man* (human being), 38.

**hōnestūs** (ūm, ā), *honorable*.

**horridūs** (ūm, ā), *rough*, 71.  
**hortōr**, **hortārī**, **hortātūs**,  
*urge*.

**hortūs** (hortō-), m., *garden*, 66.  
**hostīs** (hostī-), m. f., *enemy*,  
 54.

**hūmērūs** (hūmērō-), m.,  
*shoulder*.

**īdēm** (īdēm, eādēm), *same*,  
 100. 6.

**illē** (illūd, illā), *that*, 100. 3.

**īmāgō** (īmāgīn-), f., *image*, 38.

**imbēr** (imbrī-), m., *storm*, 52.

**immortālīs** (-ē), *deathless*.

**īn**, *in, into*, 22.

**īnānīs** (-ē), *empty*, 58.

**īnfērūs** (ūm, ā), *low*, 77.

**īnsomnīs** (-ē), *sleepless*, 58.

**īnsulā** (īnsulā-), f., *island*, 68.

**ipsē** (ipsūm, ipsā), *self*, 100. 5.

**īs** (īd, eā), *that, he, it, her*,  
 100. 3.

**ītalīā** (ītalīā-), f., *Italy*.

**ītēr** (ītīnēr-), n., *journey*, 41.

**jāciō**, **jācērē**, **jēcī**, **jactūs**,  
*throw*, 87.

**jōcūs** (jōcō-), m., *joke*, 66.

**jūcundūs** (ūm, ā), *pleasing*.

**jūdex** (jūdīc-), m. f., *judge*, 28.

**Juppītēr** (Jōv-), m., *Jupiter*  
 (the chief of the Roman  
 gods), 75.

**jūs** (jūs-), n., *right*, 41.

**lābōrō**, **lābōrārē**, **lābōrāvī**,  
**lābōrātūs**, *work*.

**lācūs** (lācū-), m., *lake*, 61.

**lāpīs** (lāpīd-), m., *stone*, 24.

**latrō**, **latrārē**, **latrāvī**, **latrā-  
 tūs**, *bark*.

**lātūs** (lātēr-), n., *side*, 41.

**lātūs** (ūm, ā), *wide*, 71.

**laudō**, **laudārē**, **laudāvī**, **laud-  
 ātūs**, *praise*.

**laus** (laud-), f., *praise*, 25.

**lēgiō** (lēgiōn-), f., *legion*, 38.

**lēgō**, **lēgērē**, **lēgī**, **lectūs**,  
*read*, 80.

**leō** (leōn-), m., *lion*, 38.

**lēvis** (-ē), *light*, 58.

**lex** (lēg-), f., *law*, 28.

**libēr** (librō-), m., *book*, 66.

**libērō**, **libērārē**, **libērāvī**,  
**libērātūs**, *set free*, 83.

**lītūs** (lītōr-), n., *shore*.

**longūs** (ūm, ā), *long*, 71.

**lōquax** (lōquāc-), *loquacious*,  
 43.

**lōquōr**, **lōquī**, **lōcūtūs**, *talk*,  
 97.

**lūdūs** (lūdō-), m., *sport, game*,  
 66.

**lūmēn** (lūmīn-), n., *light*.

**lūnā** (lūnā-), f., *moon*, 68.

**lux** (lūc-), f., *light*, 28.

**māgistēr** (māgistrō-), *master*,  
*teacher*, 66.

**magnūs** (ūm, ā), *large*, 71.

**mājōr**, *greater*, 77.

**mālō**, **mallē**, **mālūī**, *prefer*,  
 99. 4.

**mālūs** (ūm, ā), *bad*, 77.

**māneō**, **manērē**, **mansī**,  
**mansūs**, *remain*.

**mānūs** (mānū-), f., *hand*, 61.

**măre** (mări-), *n.*, sea, 53.  
**măter** (mătr-), *f.*, mother, 38.  
**mendax** (mendăc-), *lying*, 43.  
**meus** (üm, ä), *my*, 100. 2.  
**milēs** (millt-), *m.*, soldier, 24.  
**millē**, a thousand, 73.  
**minōr**, smaller, less, 77.  
**misēr** (misērüm, misēră),  
*wretched*, 69.  
**mittō**, mittērē, misī, missūs,  
*send*, 35.  
**mōneō**, mōnērē, mōnuī,  
 mōnītūs, *advise, warn*, 85.  
**mors** (mort-), *f.*, death.  
**multī** (ä, ae), *many*, 71.  
**multūs** (üm, ä), *much*, 71.  
**mūniceps** (mūncīp-), *m. f.*,  
*townsman*, 22.  
**mūrūs** (mūrō-), *m.*, wall.  
**mūs** (mūs-), *m.*, mouse, 38.

**narrō**, narrārē, narrāvī, nar-  
 rātūs, *relate*.  
**nāvis** (nāvī-), *f.*, ship, 54.  
**nōmīnō**, nōmīnārē, nōmī-  
 nāvī, nōmīnātūs, *name*, 83.  
**nōn**, *not*, 28.  
**nōvēm**, *nine*, 73.  
**nūbēs** (nūbī-), *f.*, cloud, 54.  
**nūbō**, nūbērē, nupsī, nuptūs,  
*veil, marry (sē nūbērē, to*  
*veil oneself, i.e., to marry)*, 32.  
**nūmērō**, nūmērārē, nūmē-  
 rāvī, nūmērātūs, *count*, 83.  
**nuntiūs** (nuntiō-), *m.*, messenger.

**occūlō**, occūlērē, occūluī,  
 occultūs, *hide*, 79.

**omnis** (-ē), *all*, 58.  
**optimūs** (üm, ä), *best*, 77.  
**ōpūs** (ōpēr-), *n.*, work, 41.  
**ōrātiō** (ōrātiōn-), *f.*, speech,  
*oration*.  
**ōrātōr** (ōrātōr-), *m.*, orator, 38.  
**ōs** (oss-), *n.*, bone, 41.

**pānis** (pānī-), *f.*, bread.  
**particeps** (partīcīp-), *m. f.*,  
*companion*, 22.  
**parvūs** (üm, ä), *small*, 71.  
**pastōr** (pastōr-), *m.*, shepherd,  
 38.  
**pātēr** (pātr-), *m.*, father, 38.  
**pax** (pāc-), *f.*, peace, 28.  
**pējōr**, worse, 77.  
**persēvērō**, persēvērārē, per-  
 sēvērāvī, persēvērātūs,  
*persevere*.  
**pēs** (pēd-), *m.*, foot, 25.  
**pīgēr** (pīgrüm, pīgră), *black*,  
 69.  
**pīnūs** (pīnū-, pīnō-), *f.*, pine, 61.  
**plaudō**, plaudērē, plausī,  
 plausūs, *applaud*, 35.  
**plebs** (plēb-), *f.*, people  
 (= common people).  
**plēnūs** (üm, ä), *full*, 71.  
**plūmā** (plūmā-), *f.*, feather, 68.  
**plūrimūs** (üm, ä), *most*, 77.  
**poēmā** (poēmāt-), *n.*, poem, 41.  
**pondūs** (pondēr-), *n.*, weight,  
 41.  
**pons** (pont-), *m.*, bridge, 25.  
**pontifex** (pontīfic-), *high*  
*priest*, 28.  
**pōpūlūs** (pōpūlō-), *m.*, a  
*people*.

**porcŭs** (porcŏ-), m., *pig*, 66.  
**portŭs** (portŭ-), m., *harbor*, 61.

**postŭs** (postŭ-), m., *post*, 54.  
**princeps** (princĭp-), m. f., *chief*, 22.

**puellă** (puellă-), f., *girl*, 68.  
**puer** (puerŏ-), m., *boy*, 66.  
**pugnŏ**, **pugnărĕ**, **pugnăvĭ**, **pugnătŭs**, *fight*, 83.

**pulchĕr** (pulchrŭm, pulchră), *beautiful* (see 69).

**pŭnĭŏ**, **pŭnĭrĕ**, **pŭnĭvĭ**, **pŭnĭtŭs**, *punish*, 83.

**pŭtŏ**, **pŭtărĕ**, **pŭtăvĭ**, **pŭtătŭs**, *think*.

**quăm**, *than*, 43.

**quartŭs** (ŭm, ă), *fourth*, 73.  
**quăternĭ** (ă, ae), *in groups of four*, 73.

**quătĭŏ**, **quătĕrĕ**, **quassĭ**, **quassŭs**, *shake*.

**quĭ** (quŏd, quae), *who, which*, 100. 7.

**quĭdăm** (quiddăm, quaedăm), *a certain*, 100. 9.

**quiĕs** (quiĕt-), f., *quiet*, 25.

**quinqŭĕ**, *five*, 73.

**quintŭs** (ŭm, ă), *fifth*, 73.

**quĭs** (quĭd, quae), *who? what?* 100. 8.

**rădŏ**, **rădĕrĕ**, **răsĭ**, **răsŭs**, *srape*, 35.

**răpax** (răpăc-), *rapacious*, 43.

**răpĭnă** (răpĭnă-), f., *pillage*.

**răpĭŏ**, **răpĕrĕ**, **răpuĭ**, **raptŭs**, *seize*, 87.

**rĕgĭnă** (rĕgĭnă-), f., *queen*, 68.  
**rĕgŏ**, **rĕgĕrĕ**, **rexĭ**, **rectŭs**, *rule*, 32.

**rĕs** (rĕ-), f., *thing*, 65.

**rex** (rĕg-), m., *king*, 27.

**rĭpă** (rĭpă-), f., *bank*, 68.

**rĭvŭs** (rĭvŏ-), m., *stream*, 66.

**Rŏmănŭs** (ŭm, ă), *Roman*.

**rŏsă** (rŏsă-), f., *rose*, 68.

**rumpŏ**, **rumpĕrĕ**, **rŭpĭ**, **ruptŭs**, *burst*, 87.

**rŭs** (rŭs-), n., *country*, 41.

**săgax** (săgăc-), *sagacious*, 43.

**sălŭs** (sălŭt-), f., *safety*, 25.

**sănŭs** (ŭm, ă), *rational*, 71.

**săpiens** (săpiens-), *wise*.

**scribă** (scribă-), m., *scribe*.

**scribŏ**, **scribĕrĕ**, **scripsĭ**, **scriptŭs**, *write*, 32.

**sculpŏ**, **sculpĕrĕ**, **sculpsĭ**, **sculptŭs**, *carve* (in stone), 32.

**sĕcundŭs** (ŭm, ă), *second*, 73.

**sĕd**, *but*, 28.

**sempĕr**, *always*.

**sĕnex** (sĕn-), m., *old man*, 75.

**septimŭs** (ŭm, ă), *seventh*, 73.

**sĕquŏr**, **sĕquĭ**, **sĕcŭtŭs**, *follow*, 96.

**servŭs** (servŏ-), m., *slave*, 66.

**sĭlex** (sĭlĭc-), m. f., *flint*, 28.

**sĭlvă** (sĭlvă-), f., *forest*, 68.

**sŏl** (sŏl-), m., *sun*, 37.

**somnŭs** (sommŏ-), m., *sleep*, 66.

**sŏnŏ**, **sŏnărĕ**, **sŏnăvĭ**, **sŏnătŭs**, *sound*, 88.

**sŏnŭs** (sŏnŏ-), m., *sound*, 66.

**sŏrŏr** (sŏrŏr-), f., *sister*.

**spectō, spectārē, spectāvī, spectātūs, see.**

**spernō, spernērē, sprēvī, sprētūs, despise, 87.**

**spēs (spē-), f., hope, 66.**

**splendens (splendent-), splendid, 43.**

**stātūrā (stātūrā-), f., stature, 68.**

**stellā (stellā-), f., star, 68.**

**stirps (stirp-), f., stem, 22.**

**sūpērō, sūpērārē, sūpērāvī, sūpērātūs, overcome.**

**sūpērūs (ūm, ā), high, 77.**

**tāceō, tācērē, tācuī, tācītūs, keep still, 85.**

**tām, so.**

**tēgō, tēgērē, texī, tectūs, cover, 32.**

**tēlūm (tēlō-), n., weapon, spear.**

**tempūs (tempōr-), n., time, 41.**

**terrā (terrā-), f., earth, land, 68.**

**testīs (testī-), m. f., witness, 54.**

**texō, texērē, texuī, textūs, weave, 79.**

**tīmōr (tīmōr-), m., fear, 38.**

**tingō, tingērē, tinxi, tinotūs, wet, dip, 47. 32.**

**tōgā (tōgā-), f., cloak, 68.**

**trabs (trāb-), f., beam, 22.**

**trāhō, trāhērē, traxī, tractūs, deny, draw, 32.**

**trēcentī (ā, ae), three hundred, 73.**

**tribūs (tribū-), m., tribe, 61.**

**tristīs (-ē), sad, 58.**

**tūbā (tūbā-), f., trumpet.**

**turrīs (turri-), f., tower, 54.**

**umbrā (umbrā-), f., shadow, 68.**

**undā (undā-), f., wave, 68.**

**ūnūs (ūm, ā), one, 73, 76.**

**urbs (urb-), f., city, 22.**

**vallis (valli-), f., valley, 54.**

**vēhō, vēhērē, vexī, vectūs, carry, 32.**

**vēniō, vēnirē, vēnī, ventūs, come, 91.**

**vērax (vērac-), truthful.**

**vertō, vertērē, vertī, versūs, turn, 80.**

**vespērā (vespērā-), f., evening, 68.**

**vētō, vētārē, vētuī, vētītūs, forbid, 85.**

**viā (viā-), f., way, road, 68.**

**viātōr (viātōr-), m., traveller, 38.**

**videō, vidērē, vidī, vīsūs, see, 87.**

**vīgintī, twenty, 73.**

**vincō, vincērē, vici, victūs, conquer, 87.**

**vinculūm (vinculō-), n., chain.**

**vīr (vīrō-), m., man (the sex), 66.**

**virgō (virgin-), f., maiden, 38.**

**virtūs (virtūt-), f., virtue, 25.**

**vīs (vī-), f., force, 75.**

**vītā (vītā-), f., life, 68.**

**vīvax (vīvac-), lively, 43.**

**vōlō, vellē, vōluī, wish, 99. 4.**

**vox (voc-), f., voice, 28.**



# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## TO THE EXERCISES.



about, **dē**.  
all, **omnis**.  
always, **sempēr**.  
animal, **animāl**.  
applaud, **plaudō**.

bad, **mālūs**.  
barbarian, **barbārūs**.  
bark, **lātrō**.  
beam, **trabs**.  
bear, **fērō**.  
beautiful, **pulchēr**.  
bird, **avis**.  
body, **corpūs**.  
bone, **os**.  
book, **libēr**.  
boy, **puēr**.  
bridge, **pons**.  
brother, **frātēr**.  
burst, **rumpō**.

carry, **fērō**, **vēhō**.  
carve, **sculpō**.  
chain, **cātēnā**.  
chief, **princeps**.  
citizen, **civīs**.  
city, **urbs**.  
come, **vēniō**.  
consul, **consul**.  
country, **rūs**.  
cover, **tēgō**.

cow, **bōs**.  
cross, **crux**.  
crowd, **grex**.  
crowded, **frēquens**.

death, **mors**.  
deceptive, **fallax**.  
desire, **cūpidō**.  
difficult, **difficilis**.  
dog, **cānis**.  
double, **dūplex**.  
drag, **trāhō**.  
draw, **dūcō**.  
drive, **agō**.

ear, **auris**.  
eat, **edō**.  
enemy, **hostis**.  
evening, **vespērā**.  
evil, **mālūm** (= *an* evil).

face, **faciēs**.  
fierce, **fērox**.  
fifth, **quintūs**.  
fight, **pugnō**.  
flame, **flammā**.  
fleet, **classis**.  
flock, **grex**.  
fold, **plicō**.  
follow, **sequor**.  
foot, **pēs**.

forbid, **vētō**.  
 fortunate, **fēlix**.  
 free, **libērō**.  
 friend, **amicūs**.  
  
 game, **lūdūs**.  
 garden, **hortūs**.  
 give, **dō**.  
 gladiator, **glādiātōr**.  
 gnaw, **rōdō**.  
 go, **eō**.  
 goat, **cāpēr**.  
 good, **bōnūs**.  
 grow, **crescō**.  
 guard, **custōs**.  
  
 hand, **mānūs**.  
 happy, **fēlix**.  
 hear, **audiō**.  
 heaven, **coelūm**.  
 hide, **occūlō**.  
 high, **sūpērūs**.  
 horn, **cornū**.  
 horse, **equūs**.  
 horseback, on, **ēquestēr**.  
 house, **dōmūs**, **aedēs**.  
 human being, **hōmō**.  
 hunger, **fāmēs**.  
  
 immortal, **immortālīs**.  
 in, into, **in**.  
 in company with, **cūm**.  
 in groups of four, **quāternī**.  
 island, **insulā**.  
 Italy, **Italiā**.  
  
 judge, **iūdex**.  
  
 kind, **gēnūs**.  
 king, **rex**.

large, **magnūs**.  
 lead, **dūcō**.  
 leader, **dux**.  
 legion, **lēgiō**.  
 letter (of the alphabet), **littērā**.  
 letter (= a communication),  
     **ēpistolā**.  
 light, **lux**.  
 likeness, **imāgō**.  
 lion, **leō**.  
 lively, **vīvax**.  
 low, **infērūs**.  
 lying, **mendax**.

man, **vīr** (the sex), **hōmō** (the  
     race), **sēnex** (old man).  
 many, **multī**.  
 master (of a school), **māgis-**  
     **tēr**.  
 master (of a slave), **dōmīnūs**.  
 moon, **lūnā**.  
 mother, **māter**.  
 mountain, **mons**.  
 mouse, **mūs**.  
 much, **multūs**.  
  
 name, **nōmēn**.  
 name, **nōmīnō**.  
 needle, **ācūs**.  
 nibble, **carpō**.  
 nine, **nōvēm**.

old man, **sēnex**.  
 on, **in**.  
 ox, **bōs**.

people, **pōpūlūs** (= a people),  
     **hōmīnēs** (= people), 66.  
 pig, **porcūs**.  
 pine, **pīnūs**.

pleasant, *jūcundūs*.  
 pleasing (to be), *plāceō*.  
 post, *postis*.  
 pour, *fundō*.  
 praise, *laus*.  
 praise, *laudō*.  
 prefer, *mālō*.  
 present, *dōnō*.

queen, *rēginā*.  
 quiet, *quies*.

rapacious, *rāpax*.  
 rational, *sānūs*.  
 read, *lēgō*.  
 remain, *māneō*.  
 right, *jūs*.  
 root, *rādix*.  
 rule, *rēgō*.

safety, *sālūs*.  
 sea, *mārē*.  
 sea, *vidēō*.  
 seize, *cāpiō*.  
 self, *ipsē*.  
 servant, *servūs*.  
 shade, *umbrā*.  
 side, *lātūs*.  
 sky, *coelūm*.  
 sleep, *somnūs*.  
 small, *parvūs*.  
 snow, *nix*.  
 soldier, *mīlēs*.  
 somebody, *āliquis, quidā*.  
 song, *carmēn*.  
 sound, *sōnō*.  
 sound, *sōnūs*.  
 speaker, *ōrātōr*.  
 sport, *lūdūs*.

star, *stellā*.  
 state, *civītās*.  
 stature, *stātūrā*.  
 storm, *imbēr*.  
 summit, *āpex*.  
 sun, *sōl*.  
 swordsman, *glādiātōr*.

talk, *lōquōr*.  
 tame, *dōmō*.  
 thing, *rēs*.  
 think, *pūtō, cōgitō*.  
 thousand, *millē*.  
 to, *ād*.  
 toga (= cloak), *tōgā*.  
 tooth, *dēns*.  
 towards, *ād*.  
 traveller, *viātōr*.  
 tree, *arbōr*.  
 trumpet, *tūbā*.

voice, *vox*.

wage, *gērō*.  
 walk, *ambulō*.  
 wash, *luō*.  
 water, *āquā*.  
 weak, *dēbilis*.  
 weave, *texō*.  
 weight, *pondūs*.  
 who, *quī*.  
 who? *quīs*.  
 wish, *vōlō*.  
 witness, *testis*.  
 woman, *fēmīnā*.  
 work, *ōpūs*.  
 write, *scribō*.

yield, *cōdō*.



## INDEX.

[The numbers refer to Sections.]

Abstract nouns, 116.

Accent, 16.

Adjectives, 42-4.

Adverbs, 102-3.

Alphabet, 1-7.

Antepenult, 13.

Cardinals, 72.

Case endings, 19, 39, 62.

Cases, 18.

Coined words, 149.

Comparison, 42, 70, 77.

Compound words, 8, 111, 112, 121 sqq.

Conjunctions, 106, 107.

Connecting vowels, 46, 47.

Consonants, 4, 5 II., 6.

Coördinates, 106.

Demonstratives, 100. 3.

Deponents, 96.

Diminutives, 115.

Diphthongs, 7.

Distributives, 72.

Endings, 18 *b*, 19, 39, 46, 48-50, 62.

Frequentatives, 120. 3 *a*.

Gender, 20 *a*.

Gerund, 92, 94.

Gerundives, 91. 4.

Imperative, 89.

Inchoatives, 120. 3 *b*.

Infinitive, 92, 93.

Inflection, 20, 42, 45 sqq., 69, 88.

Intensives, 100. 5.

Interjections, 108.

Interrogatives, 100. 8.

Mutes, 5 II.

Names of persons, 78.

Nude stems, 54 Note.

Numerals, 72-4.

Ordinates, 72.

Participles, 91.

Particles, 101-7.

Penult, 13.

Personal pronouns, 100. 1.

Possessives, 100. 2.

Prefixes, 8, 110.

Prepositions, 104, 105.

Primary stems, 109, 113, 114.

Pronouns, 100.

Quantity, 3, 14, 15.

Reflexives, 100. 4.

Relatives, 100. 7.

Secondary stems, 109.

Semi-deponents, 98.

Stem, 18 *a*.

of verbs, 31, 34, 86-9.

of adjectives, 42, 109.

Stem vowel, 21.

Subjunctive, 53.

Subordinate conjunctions, 106.

Suffixes, 8.

Supine, 95.

Syllables, 12, 13.

Ultima, 13.

Vowels, 2, 5 I., 6.



# GREEK AND LATIN.

**THE GREEK IN ENGLISH.** First Lessons in Greek, with special reference to the etymology of English words of Greek origin. By T. D. GOODELL, Ph.D. 16mo.

This book attempts to teach that limited portion of Greek which college men remember after they have forgotten vastly more. That is the portion which even those who wish to banish the study of Greek from our schools would admit can least easily be spared, and that portion is essential to a ready command of the English tongue.

The first idea of the book arose from hearing a woman of unusual intelligence and considerable reading, talking about altruists, when she meant agnostics. Similar confusions—confusing, ultimately, to the speaker, and constantly to the listener—are of not infrequent occurrence in conversation on topics interesting only to the “educated.” Moreover, much as the Greek element of English appears in conversation, it appears much more in literature, and carries many of the key-words to the thought. He to whom these key-words are not alive with meaning is at great disadvantage. Many a man who thinks he has retained nothing whatever from his Greek, except a lively sense of the exact meaning of such words as *metaphysics*, *agnostic*, *synthetic*, *anarchy*, *Russophobia*, nevertheless regards that sense as an intellectual acquisition worth all it cost. But after all, how great the cost of this one acquisition has been! Surely this one result of the study of Greek can be reached without devoting to it years of time. And yet mere dictionaries or etymological handbooks alone cannot give what is wanted. It is not enough to read or be told, even repeatedly, that *synthetic* is derived from such and such Greek words, and therefore has such and such a meaning. *The words in their Greek form, and with some fragment of their Greek associations*, must become somewhat familiar before one can be sensible of that grasp of their English derivatives which will enable one to use those derivatives correctly and fearlessly.

The Greek vocabulary surviving in English *can* be so presented in a sort of Greek primer, with its relations to English so pointed out, that even young pupils will find the study far from dull; and thus, of just that part of Greek which they will always use in reading current literature, they will be apt to remember more than the much-abused “average college graduate.”

This book tries to accomplish these results without waste of time and brain-tissue in “mental discipline” of doubtful value. But the writer has no faith in royal roads to learning, does not profess to have compounded an educational nostrum which will, in a few weeks’ time, electrify a boy or girl into the mastery of a difficult tongue, and does believe heartily in giving an important place in our educational system, for some generations yet, to the patient and thorough study of the Greek language and literature. This book is not intended to lessen the number of those who shall enter upon such a course of study, but it is hoped that it may increase that number. Yet it is not a sufficient introduction to the reading of a classic author, and hence is not a rival of the various excellent “First Lessons” in use. In putting these ideas into practice the material has been grouped about a grammatical outline, because the thorough memorizing of a few inflections will save time and labor in the end, by enabling the pupil from the outset to make a certain limited use of the language on rational principles. In no other way can the requisite familiarity with the Greek words be as easily gained. Besides,

## GREEK AND LATIN.

while the book is intended primarily for those who without it would never study Greek at all, those have also been kept in mind who will afterwards continue the study. Yet with the possible exception of the dual number, the memorizing of which is but a trifle, no feature whatever has been introduced which could involve labor outside of the main purpose, as set forth above.

### AN INTRODUCTION TO ATTIC GREEK. By JABEZ BROOKS, Professor in the University of Minnesota. 12mo.

Presents essentials in such manner that the learner may enter without needless detention upon an intelligent and successful reading of Attic Greek.

The fundamental idea—that nine years' experience in applying has shown to be practicable—is to begin the study of Greek with a connected text, and to so work this text over as to derive from it all the grammar involved, and then to attach to the framework thus formed whatever further grammatical apparatus is necessary. In this way the learner's activities are incited to discover for himself the laws of construction, and the author studied is made to appear as their true source.

The first chapter of the *Anabasis* has been found to contain a stock of words sufficiently varied to illustrate all the essential forms of the accidence, and is accordingly taken as a basis for work.

Conversation and dictation exercises, appealing to the learner's powers of imitation, form an integral part of the plan, and, it has been found, give him a natural and unconscious grip of the language exceeding that obtained by any other exercise.

### GREEK LITERATURE. By THOMAS SARGENT PERRY. 8vo.

A compendious philosophical account of the growth of Greek literature and of its relations to the physical surroundings and political and social history of the people. In this setting appear the outlines of the great masterpieces, with English translations of their more interesting or representative passages. The comparative method is followed, the English reader's familiarity with his own literature being made to help along his acquaintance with Greek authors. It is believed that the college-bred man who got from his study of these classics in the original but faint and distorted views of their beauties will here find assistance in extending and organizing his knowledge; and also that the man who knows little or no Greek may by this book put himself in closer contact with the spirit of Greek literature than most students of the language have attained.

### PREPARATORY LATIN AND GREEK TEXTS. Required for Admission to American Colleges. 16mo. pp. 767. Latin and Greek parts can also be had separately.

The Latin part contains five books of Cæsar, seven of Cicero's Orations, 177 pages of selections from Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, and six books of the *Æneid* and the *Bucolics*. The Greek part contains three books of the *Anabasis* and the same number of the *Iliad*.

## GREEK AND LATIN.

**SCRIVENER'S (F. H. A.) GREEK TESTAMENT.—**  
(*H KAINH ΔΙΑΘΗΚΗ*.) Novum Testamentum. Textus  
Stephanici A.D. 1550, cum Variis Lectionibus Editionum  
Bezae, Elzeviri, Lachmanni, Tischendorfii, Tregellesii,  
Westcott-Hortii, Versionis Anglicanae emendatorum, Cu-  
rante, F. H. A. SCRIVENER, A.M., D.C.L., LL.D. Accedunt  
Parallela S. Scripturae Loca. 16mo. 598 pp. Cloth.

The text is that of the Authorized Version (Stephens, 1550), with the various readings approved by Westcott and Hort, and those finally adopted by the Revisers. Dr. Scrivener has added the Eurlian Canons and Capitula, and references specially bearing on usage of words. The passages in which variations occur are printed in black type so that the eye can readily distinguish them.

**SUETONIUS'S LIVES OF THE CÆSARS.—GAI SVE-**  
**TONI TRANQVILLI DE VITA CAESARVM. LIBRI DVO.**  
Edited, with an Introduction and Commentary, by HARRY  
THURSTON PECK, Ph.D., Professor of the Latin Language  
and Literature in Columbia College. 12mo, pp. xxxv, 215.

It is difficult to ascertain the reason why the Lives of Suetonius have been suffered to remain so long unedited by English-speaking scholars. No work of equal size that has come down to us from classical antiquity possesses a more real interest or a more enduring value. In the historical significance of the period that it covers, in the light it throws upon so many points of Roman custom, and in the impartiality, thoroughness, and conscientious accuracy of its author, it has always been regarded as a most important source of information concerning the men and measures of the Early Empire. It is also a rich mine of personal anecdote, giving innumerable glimpses of many famous Romans, divested of the stage properties with which we almost always find them in the pages of the professional historians.

It is, then, with the hope of gaining for the Roman Plutarch a wider circle of appreciative readers that the present volume is given to the public. The first two books of the Lives have been selected because they have to do with that period of transition which, with its tremendous moral, social, and political revolution, forms perhaps the most remarkable era of Roman history; and also because their subject is the personality of the two great Cæsars who laid the foundation of an empire whose influence is still moulding the development of modern Europe, as its grandeur is still potent in the realm of imagination.

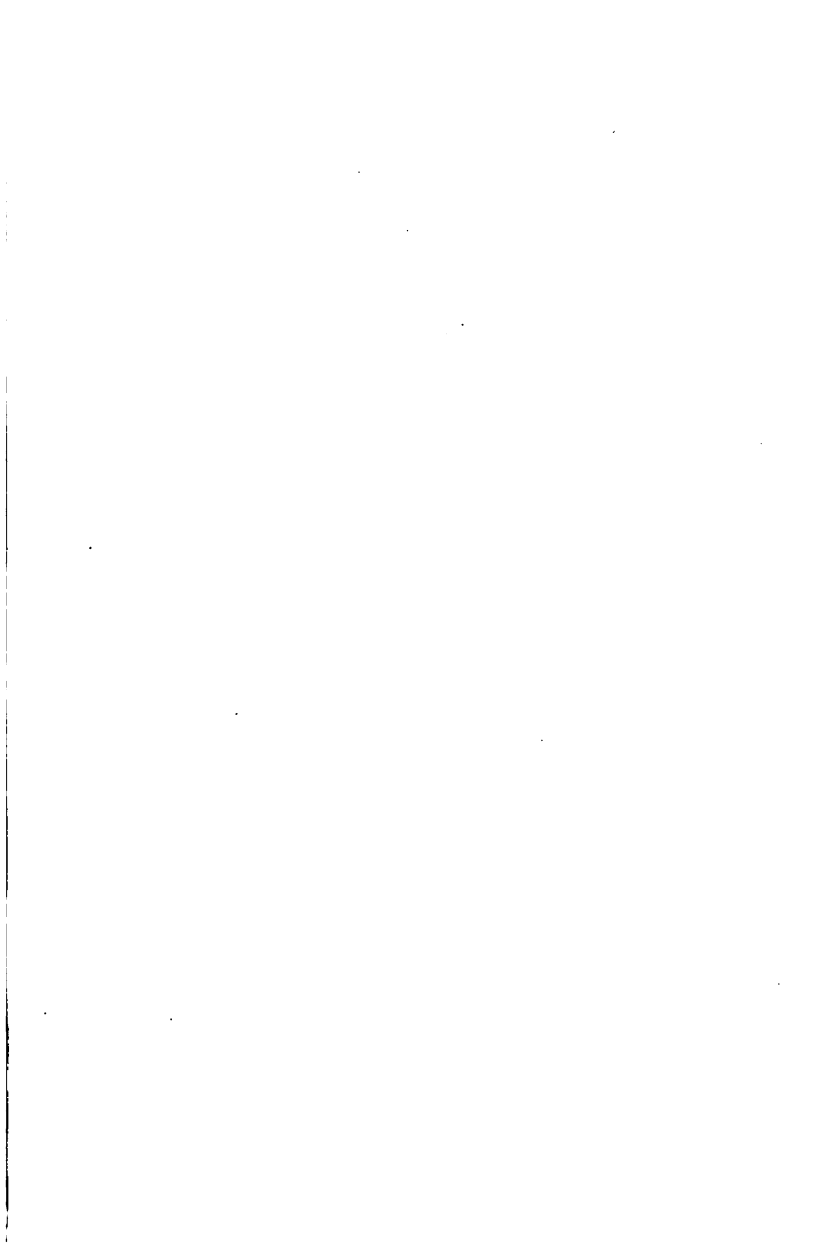
The text of the present edition is based upon the text of C. L. Roth (Leipzig, 1886). Some variations from his readings have been noted and defended in the Commentary. To obviate any reasonable objections to Suetonius's plainness of speech, a few sentences have been relegated to the notes, but without any alteration in the original numbering of the sections. These textual omissions have been made with a sparing hand; for experience has only served to strengthen the conviction of the editor, that the application to a classic author of any extended system of expurgation is at once a moral blunder and a literary crime.

**HENRY HOLT & CO., PUBLISHERS, N. Y.**

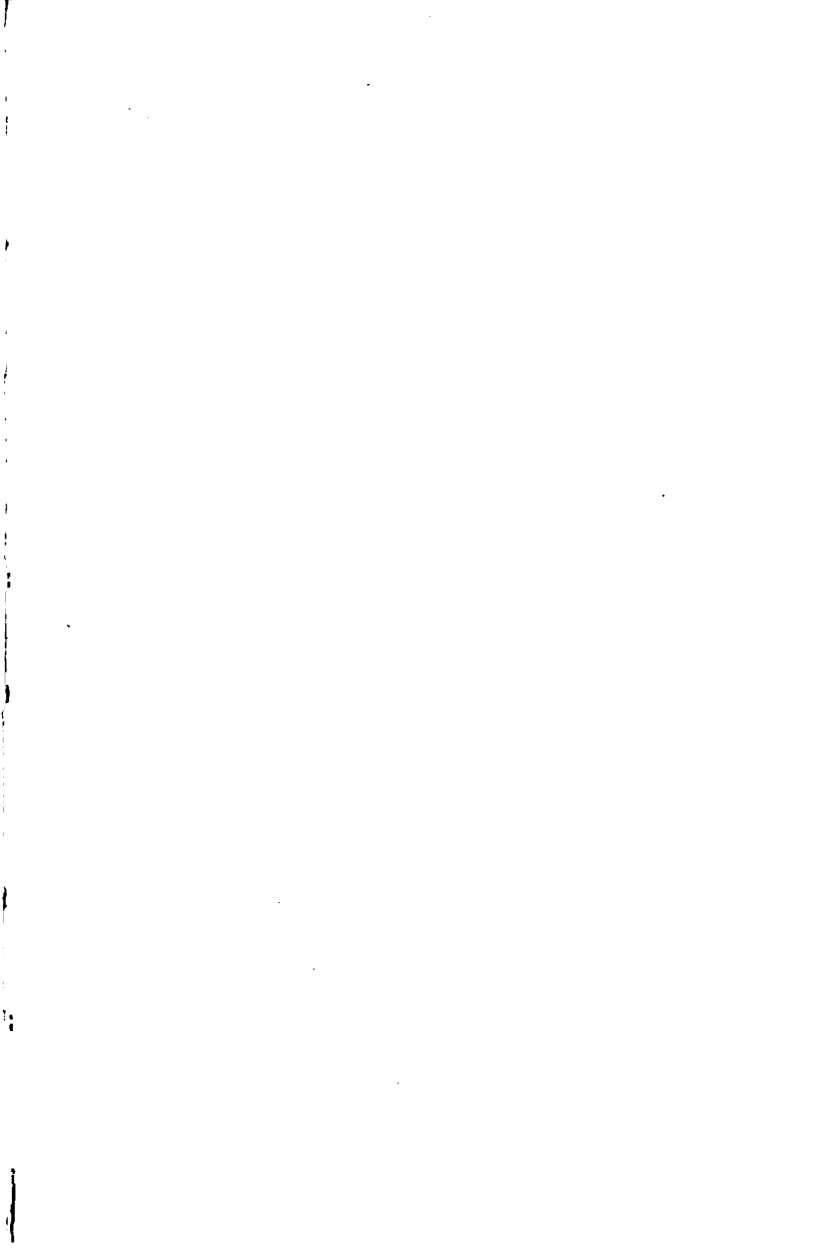


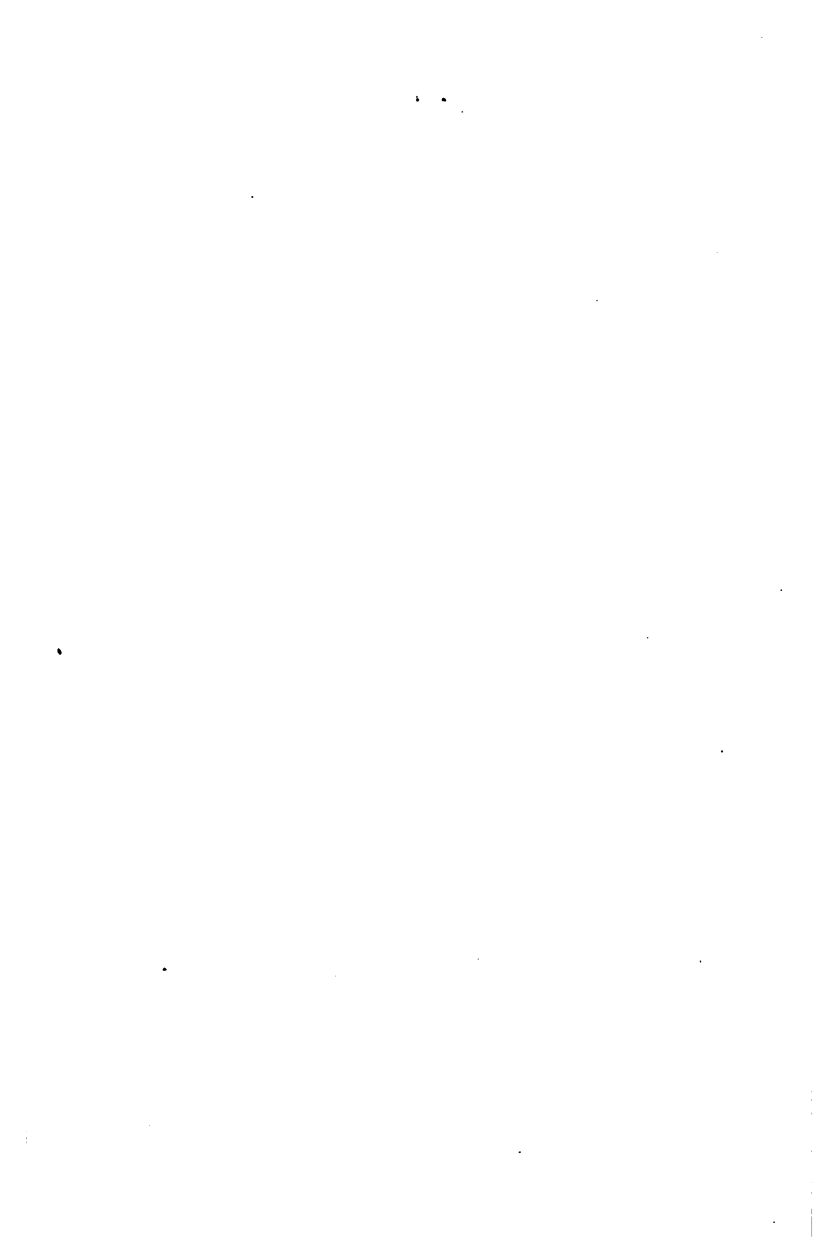


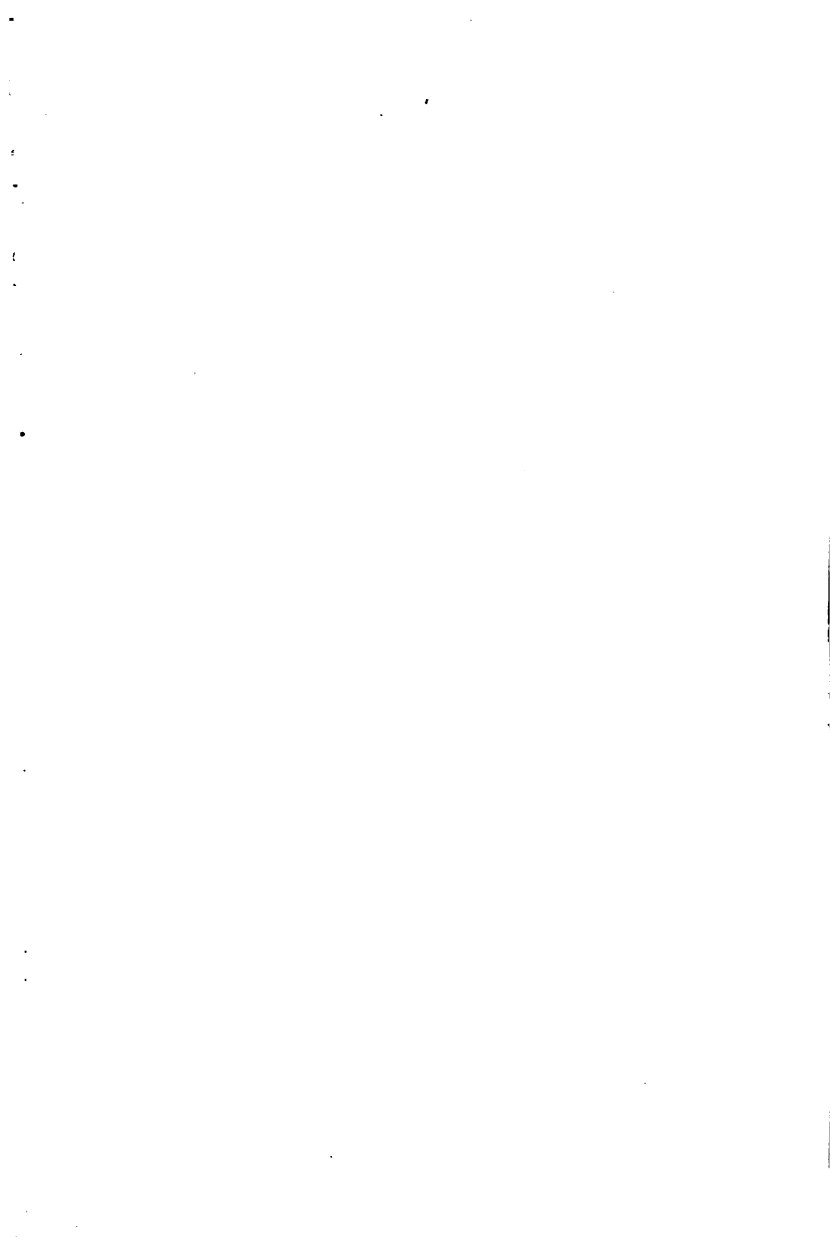












**RETURN TO: CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT  
198 Main Stacks**

LOAN PERIOD Home Use	1	2	3
	4	5	6

**ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS.**

Renewals and Recharges may be made 4 days prior to the due date.  
Books may be renewed by calling 642-3405.

**DUE AS STAMPED BELOW.**

<b>FEB 01 2006</b>		
<b>AUG 16 2008</b>		

YB 00410

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C051435739

Judson

69334



